<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In brief</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keys, doors and windows</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seats, restraints</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruments and controls</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving and operating</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle care</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service and maintenance</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical data</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer information</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Introduction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuel</th>
<th>Designation</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Viscosity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre pressure</td>
<td>Tyre size</td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer tyres</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter tyres</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weights</td>
<td>Gross vehicle weight rating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Kerb weight, basic model</td>
<td></td>
<td>= Loading</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Vehicle specific data**

Please enter your vehicle's data on the previous page to keep it easily accessible. This information is available in the sections "Service and maintenance" and "Technical data" as well as on the identification plate.

**Introduction**

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Vauxhall Authorised Repairer.

For gas vehicles, we recommend a Vauxhall Authorised Repairer licensed to service gas vehicles.

All Vauxhall Authorised Repairers provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Vauxhall work according to specific Vauxhall instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

**Using this manual**

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.
Introduction

Danger, Warnings and Cautions

**Danger**

Text marked △Danger provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

**Warning**

Text marked △Warning provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

**Caution**

Text marked Caution provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⚫. ⚫ means "see page". Page references and index entries refer to the indented headings given in the section table of content. Chronological order to select menu entries in the vehicle personalisation is indicated with ⚫.

Thank you for choosing a Vauxhall.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

Your Vauxhall Team
In brief

Initial drive information

Vehicle unlocking

Press 🗝️ to unlock the doors and load compartment. Open the doors by pulling the handles.

Tailgate

5-door Hatchback: to open the tailgate, push the touchpad switch below the brand emblem.

Sports Tourer: to open the tailgate, push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding.

Radio remote control 20.

Central locking system 23.

Electronic key system 21.

Load compartment 29.
In brief

Seat adjustment

Longitudinal adjustment

Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Seat position 46.
Manual seat adjustment 47.
Power seat adjustment 49.

Backrests inclination

Turn handwheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.
Seat position 46.
Manual seat adjustment 47.
Power seat adjustment 49.

Seat height

Lever pumping motion
up : seat higher
down : seat lower
Seat position 46.
Manual seat adjustment 47.
Power seat adjustment 49.
In brief

Seat inclination

Press switch
top : front end higher
bottom : front end lower

Seat position 46.
Manual seat adjustment 47.
Power seat adjustment 49.

Head restraint adjustment

Press release button, adjust height, engage.
Head restraints 45.

Seat belt

Pull out the seat belt and engage in belt buckle. The seat belt must not be twisted and must fit close against the body. The backrest must not be tilted back too far (maximum approx. 25°).
To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.
Seat position 46, Seat belts 55, Airbag system 57.
Mirror adjustment

Interior mirror

To adjust the mirror, move the mirror housing in the desired direction.


Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror 40.

Exterior mirrors

Select the relevant exterior mirror by switching the rocker control to left mirror (L) or right mirror (R). Adjust respective mirror by the four-way control.

Convex exterior mirrors 38, Electric adjustment 38, Folding exterior mirrors 38.

Heated exterior mirrors 39.

Steering wheel adjustment

Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

Airbag system 57, Ignition positions 154.
Instrument panel overview
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>In brief</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Power windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Exterior mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Central locking system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Side air vents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Cruise control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Turn and lane-change signals, headlight flash, low/high beam, high beam assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Exit lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Parking lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Buttons for Driver Information Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Driver Information Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Buttons for Driver Information Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Forward collision alert indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Windscreen wiper and washer, rear wiper and washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Centre air vents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Info-Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Anti-theft alarm system status LED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Hazard warning flashers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Glovebox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>CD player</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Controls for Info-Display operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Climate control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Fuse box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Power connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Traction Control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Controls for Info-Display operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Electronic Stability Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Sport mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Parking assist/Advanced parking assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Lane keep assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Eco button for stop-start system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Manual transmission automated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Parking brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Power button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Ignition switch with steering wheel lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Steering wheel adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Bonnet release lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Storage compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Light switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Headlight range adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Front/rear fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Instrument illumination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In brief

**Exterior lighting**

**AUTO** : automatic light control
   switches automatically between daytime running light and headlight

**$D** : sidelights

**D** : headlights

Automatic light control  133.

**Fog lights**

Press button in light switch:

$D$ : front fog lights

$\&$ : rear fog light

**Headlight flash, high beam and low beam**

- Headlight flash : pull lever
- High beam : push lever
- Low beam : push or pull lever

High beam 133.
Headlight flash 133.
LED headlights 134.
High beam assist 134.

**Turn and lane-change signals**

- Lever up : right turn signal
- Lever down : left turn signal

Turn and lane-change signals 138, Parking lights 139.
Hazard warning flashers

Operated by pressing △. Hazard warning flashers ☞ 137.

Horn

Press ⬤.

Washer and wiper systems

Windscreen wiper

HI : fast
LO : slow
INT : interval wiping
or
automatic wiping with rain sensor
OFF : off

For single wipe when the wiper is off, press lever down to position 1x. Windscreen wiper ☞ 91.
Windscreen washer

Pull lever.
Windscreen washer system  91,
Washer fluid  216, Wiper blade replacement  219.

Rear window wiper

Turn outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:
ON  : continuous operation
INT  : intermittent operation
OFF  : off

Rear window washer

Push lever.
Washer fluid is sprayed on the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.
Rear window wiper/washer  93.
Climate control

Heated rear window

The heating is operated by pressing Ü.

Heated rear window  42.

Heated exterior mirrors

Pressing Ü also activates the heated exterior mirrors.

Heated exterior mirrors  39.

Demisting and defrosting the windows

- Press Ü: the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window Ü.
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Heating and ventilation system  143.

Air conditioning system  144.

Transmission

Manual transmission

Reverse: with the vehicle stationary, depress clutch pedal and press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

Manual transmission  169.
**Automatic transmission**

P: park position  
R: reverse  
N: neutral mode  
D: automatic mode  
M: manual mode  
+: upshift  
−: downshift

The selector lever can only be moved out of P when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied. To engage P or R, press the release button.

Automatic transmission $\diamondsuit$ 165.

**Manual transmission automated**

N: neutral position  
D: automatic mode  
M: manual mode  
+: upshift  
−: downshift  
R: reverse  

Engage reverse only when vehicle is stationary.

Manual transmission automated $\diamondsuit$ 169.

**Starting off**

**Check before starting off**

- Tyre pressure and condition $\diamondsuit$ 238, $\diamondsuit$ 276.
- Engine oil level and fluid levels $\diamondsuit$ 214.
- All windows, mirrors, exterior lighting and number plates are free from dirt, snow and ice and are operational.
- Proper position of mirrors, seats, and seat belts $\diamondsuit$ 38, $\diamondsuit$ 46, $\diamondsuit$ 56.
- Brake function at low speed, particularly if the brakes are wet.
Starting the engine

- Ignition switch: turn key to position 2.
  Power button: press Engine Start/Stop for a few seconds until green LED illuminates.
- Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
  Manual transmission automated: operate brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to P or N.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.
- Diesel engines: wait until control indicator for preheating extinguishes.
- Ignition switch: turn key to position 3 and release.

Power button: press Engine Start/Stop and release.

Starting the engine 157.

Stop-start system

If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill and certain conditions are fulfilled, an Autostop is activated.
An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer.
A restart is indicated by the needle at the idle speed position in the tachometer.
Stop-start system 159.
Parking

⚠️ Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.
- For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch for a minimum of one second until control indicator illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied.
- Switch off the engine.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position P before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.
- If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position P before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close the windows and the sunroof.
- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.
- For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position P.
- For vehicles with manual transmission automated, the key can only be removed from the ignition switch when the parking brake is applied.
- Lock the vehicle with on the radio remote control.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off.

Caution

- After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

Keys, locks, Laying-up the vehicle for a long period of time.
### Keys, doors and windows

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keys, locks</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keys</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio remote control</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic key system</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memorised settings</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central locking system</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic locking</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child locks</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle security</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-theft locking system</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-theft alarm system</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobiliser</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior mirrors</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convex shape</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electric adjustment</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folding mirrors</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated mirrors</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior mirrors</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual anti-dazzle</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic anti-dazzle</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windscreen</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual windows</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power windows</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated rear window</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun visors</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunroof</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Caution**

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

### Keys, locks

#### Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Replacement keys</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Locks

- Anti-theft locking system: 257, Central locking:
- Immobiliser:
  - Locks 257, Central locking 23, Starting the engine 157.
  - Radio remote control 20.
  - Electronic key 21.
- The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.
- Wheel changing 248.
Key with foldaway key section

Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

Lock cylinders

Designed to free-wheel if they are forcefully rotated without the correct key or if the correct key is not fully inserted. To reset, turn cylinder with the correct key until its slot is vertical, remove key then re-insert it. If the cylinder still free-wheels, turn the key through 180° and repeat operation.

Radio remote control

Enables operation of the following functions via the use of the remote control buttons:
- central locking system 23
- anti-theft locking system 35
- anti-theft alarm system 35
- power windows 40
- sunroof 43

The remote control has a range of up to 100 metres, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Replacing battery in radio remote control

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.
1. Insert flat screwdriver into the slot and separate the back cover from the remote control by slightly turning the screwdriver.

2. Remove and replace battery. Use CR 2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.

3. Insert the back cover in the area of the key blade, fold down and close.

Radio remote control synchronisation

After replacing the battery, unlock the door with the key in the driver’s door lock. The radio remote control will be synchronised when you switch on the ignition.

Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- The range is exceeded.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range, which will require re-synchronisation.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Manual unlocking ⚙️ 23

Electronic key system

Enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

- central locking system ⚙️ 23
- power tailgate ⚙️ 29
- ignition switching on and starting the engine ⚙️ 157

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver’s person.
Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control ⚙️ 20.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.
**Notice**
Do not put the electronic key into the load compartment or in front of the Info-Display.

**Replacing battery in electronic key**
Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre ◀ 120.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

To replace:

1. Press button at the back of the electronic key unit and extract the key blade from the housing.

2. Insert the key blade again for approx. 6 mm and turn the key to open the housing. Further insertion of the key blade can damage the housing.

3. Remove and replace battery. Use CR 2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.

4. Close the housing and insert key blade.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

**Electronic key synchronisation**
The electronic key synchronises itself automatically during every starting procedure.
Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in electronic key.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the electronic key.

Manual unlocking ◤ 23.

Memorised settings

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the following settings are automatically memorised by the remote control unit or the electronic key:

- automatic climate control
- lighting
- Infotainment system
- central locking system
- Sport mode settings
- comfort settings

The saved settings are automatically used the next time the ignition is switched on with the memorised key of the remote control unit ◤ 154 or electronic key ◤ 21.

A precondition is that Personalisation by Driver is activated in the personal settings of the Info-Display. This must be set for each remote control unit or electronic key which is used. The status change is available only after locking and unlocking the vehicle.

The assigned memory position of the power seat is automatically recalled when switching on ignition and Auto Memory Recall is activated in the Info-Display for the memorised remote control or electronic key.

Power seat ◤ 49.

Vehicle personalisation ◤ 122.

Central locking system

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks the respective door. Pulling the handle once more opens the door.

Notice

In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Notice

A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation ◤ 122.
Remote control operation

Unlocking

Press  

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info-Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing  once.
- Only the driver's door, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing  once. To unlock all doors, press  twice.

Select the relevant setting in Settings, Vehicle in the Info-Display.

Info-Display  
Vehicle personalisation  
The setting can be saved for the remote control being used.
Memorised settings  
Unlocking and opening the tailgate  

Locking

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

Press  

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.

Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Electronic key system operation

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.
Unlocking

Press the button on the respective exterior door handle and pull the handle.

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info-Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing the button on any exterior handle once.
- Only the driver's door, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing the button on the driver's door exterior handle once. To unlock all doors, press button twice.

The system locks if any of the following occurs:

- It has been more than five seconds since unlocking.
- The button on an exterior handle has been pressed twice within five seconds to unlock the vehicle.
- Any door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted and a warning chime sounds three times.

If there have been two or more electronic keys in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the doors will be locked even if just one electronic key is taken out of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening the tailgate

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened handsfree via moving the foot below the rear bumper or by pushing the touchpad switch under the brand emblem when the electronic key is in range. The doors remain locked.

Load compartment 29.
Operation with buttons on the electronic key

The central locking system can also be operated with the buttons on the electronic key.
Press  to unlock.
Press  to lock.
Press  twice to unlock and open only the power tailgate.
Remote control operation  23.

Passive locking
Automatic locking  28.

Confirmation
Operation of central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation  122.

Central locking buttons
Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap from the passenger compartment via a switch in the driver's door panel.

Press  to lock.
Press  to unlock.

Operation with the key in case of a central locking system fault
In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control/electronic key battery is discharged, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.
The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.

Remote control: to remove the cap, insert the key into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.
Keys  19.
Electronic key: to remove the cap, press button at the back and extract the key blade from the housing. Insert the key into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward. Electronic key system 21.

Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder.

The other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle twice or by pressing in the driver's door panel. The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked.

By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

Push inside locking knob of all doors except driver's door or press in the driver's door panel. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder. The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.
After locking, cover the lock cylinder with the cap: insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side.

**Automatic locking**

**Automatic locking after driving off**

This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap after driving off and exceeding a certain speed.

When at a standstill after driving, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically as soon as the key is removed from the ignition switch, or with electronic key system when the ignition is switched off.

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be set in the menu **Settings, Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display 118.

Vehicle personalisation 122.

The setting can be saved for the remote control or electronic key being used 23.

**Automatic relock after unlocking**

This feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided no door has been opened.

Activation or deactivation of automatic relock can be set in the menu **Settings, Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display 118.

Vehicle personalisation 122.

The setting can be saved for the remote control or electronic key being used 23.

**Passive locking**

On vehicles with electronic key system, this feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if an electronic key has been recognised previously inside the vehicle, all doors have then been closed and the electronic key does not remain within the vehicle.

If the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, passive locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more electronic keys in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the feature locks the vehicle if just one electronic key is taken out of the vehicle.

Passive locking can be disabled by pressing  for a few seconds while one door is open. It remains disabled until  is pressed or the ignition is switched on.
Activation or deactivation of passive locking can be set in the menu Settings, Vehicle in the Info-Display.
Info-Display © 118.
Vehicle personalisation © 122.
The setting can be saved for the electronic key being used © 23.

Child locks

⚠️ Warning

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Move the pin in the rear door to the front. The door cannot be opened from the inside.
To deactivate, move the pin to the rear position.

Doors

Load compartment

Tailgate

Opening
5-door Hatchback

After unlocking, push the touchpad switch under the brand emblem and open the tailgate.
Sports Tourer

After unlocking, push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate manually.
Central locking system 23.

Closing

Use one of the interior handles.
Do not push the touchpad switch whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.
Central locking system 23.

Power tailgate

⚠️ Warning
Take care when operating the power tailgate. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the movable tailgate when operating. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped during operating and no one is standing within the moving area.

The power tailgate can be operated by:
- Pressing ⌚ twice on the electronic key.
- Handsfree operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper.
- The touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding and ⌋ in the open tailgate.
- The switch ⌋ on the inside of the driver's door.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the tailgate can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary and automatic transmission in P.

The turn signal lights flash and a chime sounds when the power tailgate is operating.
Notice
Operating the power tailgate does not operate the central locking system. To open the tailgate with the button on the electronic key, or with the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding or via handsfree operation, it is not necessary to unlock the vehicle. A precondition is that the electronic key is outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the tailgate.
Do not leave the electronic key in the load compartment.
Lock the vehicle after closing if it was unlocked previously.
Central locking system ⌂ 23.

Operation with the electronic key
Press 🛑 twice to open or close the tailgate.

Handsfree operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper
To open or close the tailgate move the foot below the rear bumper back and forth in the area shown in the illustration. If equipped with parking assist, the area is recognisable below the shown sensor. Do not hold the foot longer or move too slow below the bumper. The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the tailgate.
### Danger
Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during handsfree operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

**Operation with the touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding**

To open the tailgate, press the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding until the tailgate starts to move. If the vehicle is locked, the electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the tailgate.

To close, press in the open tailgate until the tailgate starts to move.

**Operation with the switch on the inside of the driver's door**

Press on the inside of the driver's door until the tailgate starts to open or close.

**Stop or change direction of movement**
Stop movement of the tailgate immediately:
- press once on the electronic key, or
- press the touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding, or
• press on the open tailgate, or
• press on the inside of the driver's door.

Pressing one of the switches again will reverse the direction of movement.

**Operation modes**
The power tailgate has three modes of operation, which are controlled by the switch in the driver's door. To change the mode, turn the switch:

- **Normal mode MAX**: Power tailgate opens to full height.
- **Intermediate mode 3/4**: Power tailgate opens to a reduced height that can be adjusted.
- **Mode Off**: Tailgate can only be operated manually.

**Adjust reduced opening height in intermediate mode**
1. Turn operation mode switch to 3/4.
2. Open power tailgate with any operation switch.
3. Stop movement at the desired height by pressing any operation switch. If required, manually move the stopped tailgate to the desired position.

4. Press and hold the button on the inside of the open tailgate for three seconds.

**Notice**
Adjusting opening height should be programmed at ground level.

A chime sound indicates the new setting and the turn signal lights will flash. The reduced height can only be set at an opening angle of above 30°.

When turning the adjuster wheel in the driver's door to intermediate mode 3/4, the power tailgate will stop opening at the newly set position.
The tailgate can only be held open if a minimum height is exceeded (minimum opening angle from 30°). The opening height cannot be programmed below that height.

**Safety function**
If the power tailgate encounters an obstacle during opening or closing, the direction of movement will automatically be reversed slightly. Multiple obstacles in one power cycle will deactivate the function. In this case, close or open the tailgate manually.

The power tailgate has pinch sensors on the side edges. If the sensors detect obstacles between tailgate and chassis, the tailgate will open, until it is activated again or closed manually. The safety function is indicated by a warning chime.

Remove all obstacles before resuming normal power operation.

If the vehicle is equipped with factory-fitted towing equipment and a trailer is electrically connected, the power tailgate can only be opened with the touchpad switch or closed with in the open tailgate. Ensure that there are no obstacles in the moving area.

**Overload**
If the power tailgate is repeatedly operated at short intervals, the function is disabled for some time. Move tailgate manually into end position to reset the system.

**General hints for operating tailgate**

---

**Danger**

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

---

**Caution**

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

---

**Notice**
The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

**Notice**
The operation of the power tailgate is disabled under low vehicle battery conditions. In this case, the tailgate may not even be manually operable.

**Notice**
With the power tailgate disabled and all doors unlocked, the tailgate can only be operated manually. In this event, manually closing the tailgate requires significantly greater force.

**Notice**
At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this case lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.
Vehicle security

Anti-theft locking system

⚠️ Warning
Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.

If the ignition was on, the driver's door must be opened and closed once so that the vehicle can be secured.

Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.

Activating

Press ⌖ on the radio remote control twice within five seconds.

Anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the central locking system.

It monitors:
- doors, tailgate, bonnet
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment
- vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised
- ignition

Activation

All doors must be closed and the electronic key of the electronic key system must not remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- Radio remote control: self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing ⌖ once.
- Electronic key system: self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing the button on any exterior door handle.
- Radio remote control or electronic key: directly by pressing twice within five seconds.
- Electronic key system with passive locking enabled: briefly activated after passive locking occurs.

**Notice**
Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers, and open windows or sunroof, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

**Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination**

Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Close tailgate, bonnet, windows and sunroof.
2. Press . LED in the button illuminates for a maximum of ten minutes.
3. Close doors.
4. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

**Status LED**

Status LED is integrated in the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:
- LED illuminates : test, arming delay
- LED flashes : doors, tailgate or quickly
- bonnet not completely closed, or system fault
Status after system is armed:
LED flashes slowly: system is armed
Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

Deactivation
Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing \[c\] deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

Electronic key system: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing the button on any exterior door handle deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.
The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

Alarm
When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.
The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing \[c\], by pressing the switch on the door handle with electronic key system or switching on the ignition.
A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning lights. They will flash quickly three times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control. Additionally a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre after switching on the ignition.

Vehicle messages \(\Rightarrow 120\).
If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

Immobiliser
The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.
The immobiliser is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
If the control indicator \[d\] flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system; the engine cannot be started. Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt.
If the control indicator \[d\] continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using the spare key and seek the assistance of a workshop.
Notice
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

Notice
The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it and switch on the anti-theft alarm system 23, 35.

Control indicator 112.

Exterior mirrors

Convex shape
The convex exterior mirror on the driver's side contains an aspherical area and reduces blind spots. The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances. Side blind spot alert 194.

Electric adjustment

Select the relevant exterior mirror by switching the control to left (L) or right (R). Then swivel the control to adjust the mirror.

In position ● no mirror is selected.

Folding mirrors

For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.
Electric folding

Switch control to ●, then push the control ▼ down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.
Push the control down again - both exterior mirrors return to their original position.
If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pressing down the control will only electrically extend the other mirror.

Heated mirrors

Operated by pressing [図]. Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Interior mirrors

Manual anti-dazzle

To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.
Keys, doors and windows

Automatic anti-dazzle

Dazzle from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

Windows

Windscreen

Windscreen stickers
Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Windscreen replacement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately according to Vauxhall specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and/or messages from these systems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Manual windows

The door windows can be opened or closed with the window cranks.

Power windows

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Switch on ignition to operate power windows. Retained power off  156.
Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety function
If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function
In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

Child safety system for rear windows
Press 🎯 to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press 🎯 again.

Operating windows from outside
The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.
Press and hold 🚪 to open windows. Press and hold ⌫ to close windows. Release button to stop window movement.

If the windows are fully opened or closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

**Overload**

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

---

**Initialising the power windows**

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ➿ 120.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

---

**Heated rear window**

Operated by pressing 🎈

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

**Sun visors**

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.
Roof

Sunroof

⚠️ Warning
Take care when operating the sunroof. Risk of injury, particularly to children.
Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate the sunroof.

Open or close
Press ◀ or ▶ gently to the first detent: sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.
Press ◀ or ▶ firmly to the second detent then release: the sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

Raise or close
Press ◀ or ▶: sunroof is raised or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled.

Sunblind
The sunblind is manually operated. Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

General hints

Safety function
If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function
In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch ◀ pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes with safety function disabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

Closing sunroof from outside
The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.
Press and hold ‣ to close the sunroof.
Release the button to stop the movement.

**Initialising after a power failure**
After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your workshop.
Seats, restraints

Head restraints ................................ 45
Front seats ..................................... 46
   Seat position ................................ 46
   Manual seat adjustment ..................... 47
   Power seat adjustment ....................... 49
Armrest ........................................ 52
Heating ......................................... 53
Ventilating ..................................... 53
Massage ........................................ 54
Rear seats ....................................... 54
   Armrest ....................................... 54
   Heating ....................................... 54
Seat belts ....................................... 55
   Three-point seat belt ....................... 56
Airbag system .................................. 57
   Front airbag system ......................... 60
   Side airbag system .......................... 60
   Curtain airbag system ....................... 61
   Airbag deactivation .......................... 62
Child restraints ............................... 63
   Child restraint systems ..................... 63
   Child restraint installation locations ....... 66

Head restraints

Position

⚠️ Warning

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.

The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

Adjustment

Head restraints on front seats

Height adjustment
Press release button, adjust height, engage.
Head restraints on rear seats

Height adjustment
Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

Removal of rear head restraints
E.g. for load compartment extension ▶ 72.

Front seats

Seat position

⚠️ Warning
Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

⚠️ Danger
Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

⚠️ Warning
Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

⚠️ Warning
Never store any objects under the seats.
- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when fully pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.

- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.

- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders on the backrest.

- Adjust the steering wheel \( \Theta \) 90.

- Adjust the head restraint \( \Theta \) 45.

- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.

- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

---

**Manual seat adjustment**

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

**Longitudinal adjustment**

Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.
**Backrest inclination**

Turn handwheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

**Seat height**

Lever pumping motion
up : seat higher
down : seat lower

**Seat inclination**

Press switch
top : front end higher
bottom : front end lower
**Lumbar support**

Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.
Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.
Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

**Adjustable thigh support**

Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

**Power seat adjustment**

- **Warning**

  Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped.

- **Longitudinal adjustment**

  Keep a close watch on the seats when adjusting them. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

  Move switch forwards/backwards.
Seats, restraints

Seat height

Move switch upwards/downwards.

Seat inclination

Tilt switch forwards/backwards.

Backrest inclination

Tilt front of switch upwards/downwards.

Lumbar support

Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.
Adjustable thigh support
Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

Side bolster
Adjust seat backrest width to suit personal requirements.
Press ‡ to reduce backrest width.
Press † to increase backrest width.

Memory function for power seat adjustment
Two different driver's seat settings can be stored.
Memorised settings ‡ 23, Vehicle personalisation ‡ 122.

Storing memory position
- Adjust driver's seat to desired position.
- Press and hold MEM and 1 or 2 simultaneously until a chime sounds.

Recall of memory positions
Press and hold 1 or 2 until the stored seat position has been reached. Releasing the button during seat movement cancels the recall.

Automatic recall of memory positions
Memory positions are each assigned to the respective radio remote control unit or electronic key.
The stored positions are automatically recalled when the ignition is switched on.

To stop recall movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

Precondition is that **Personalisation by Driver** and **Auto Memory Recall** is activated in the personal settings of the Info-Display.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in the **Vehicle** menu in the Info-Display.

**Info-Display** 3 118.

**Vehicle personalisation** 3 122.

**Easy exit function**

For a convenient exit out of the vehicle, the power driver seat moves rearwards when vehicle is stationary.

To activate the easy exit function:

- set selector lever to position P (automatic transmission)
- apply parking brake (manual transmission)
- switch off ignition
- remove key from the ignition switch
- open the driver’s door

If the door is already open, switch off ignition to activate easy exit.

To stop movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in the **Vehicle** menu in the Info-Display.

**Info-Display** 3 118.

**Vehicle personalisation** 3 122.

**Safety function**

If the driver’s seat encounters resistance during movement, the recall may stop. After removing the obstruction, press and hold the appropriate memory position button for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again. If the recall does not operate, consult a workshop.

**Overload**

If the seat setting is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut-off for a short time.

**Notice**

After an accident in which airbags have been deployed, the memory function for each position button will be deactivated.

**Armrest**

The armrest can be slid forwards by 10 cm. Under the armrest there is a storage compartment.

**Armrest storage** 3 71.
**Heating**

Adjust heating to the desired setting by pressing 🌡️ for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.

Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

The seat heating will be reduced automatically from highest level to medium level after 30 minutes.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

---

**Automatic seat heating**

Depending on the equipment, the automatic seat heating can be enabled in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info-Display.

Vehicle personalisation ➔ 122.

When enabled, the heating of the seats will be activated automatically at vehicle start. The activation is based on several parameters such as vehicle interior temperature, intensity and direction of the sun and temperature setting of the electronic climate control system for the driver and passenger side.

As the vehicle’s interior warms up, the seat heating level will be reduced automatically until it finally goes off. The seat heating level being provided during the automatic operation is shown by heated seat indicator lights.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the automatic seat heating feature will not activate the seat heating for that seat.

---

**Ventilating**

Adjust ventilating to the desired setting by pressing 🌡️ for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.

Ventilated seats are operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

---

Stop-start system ➔ 159.

The seat heating buttons can be pressed at any time to exit the automatic seat heating for the respective seat and control the seat heating manually instead.
**Massage**

Press ✈ to switch on the back massage function.
To switch off, press ✈ again.
After ten minutes the massage function is switched off automatically.

---

**Rear seats**

**Armrest**

Fold armrest down.

---

**Heating**

Activate seat heating by pressing ❖ for the respective rear outer seat. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.
Press ❖ once more to deactivate seat heating.
Prolonged use for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.
Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.
Stop-start system ◊ 159.
Seat belts

The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle holding the occupants in the sitting position. Thereby the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

⚠️ Warning
Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time. Child restraint system 🔄 63.
Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage, pollution and proper functionality.
Have damaged components replaced. After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

Notice
Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or are trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Seat belt reminder
Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated for front seats by control indicators 🛡️ and 🛡️², or for rear seats by the symbol 🛡️ in the Driver Information Centre 🛡️ 107.

Belt force limiters
Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

Belt pretensioners
In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front and rear seat belts are tightened. The front seat belts are tightened by two pretensioners per seat. The outer rear seat belts are tightened by one pretensioner per seat.

⚠️ Warning
Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator 🛡️ 🛡️ 108.
Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

Notice
Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners. Do not make any
modifications to belt pretensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

Three-point seat belt

Fasten

Withdraw the belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Tighten the lap belt regularly whilst driving by pulling the shoulder belt.

Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

![Image of a person fastening a seat belt]

⚠️ Warning

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder 🚙 107.

Unfasten

To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

![Image of a person unfastening a seat belt]
Using the seat belt while pregnant

![Image of a pregnant woman with a seat belt]

**Warning**

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

---

### Airbag system

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered, the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Warning</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If handled improperly, the airbag systems can be triggered in an explosive manner.

**Notice**

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not stick anything on the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it might be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced. Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

When the airbags inflate, escaping hot gases may cause burns.

Control indicator 🇦 for airbag systems 📄 108.

**Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems**

Warning according to ECE R94.02:
EN: NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHwere VERLETZUNGEN des KINDES zur Folge haben kann.

FR: NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'inflicter des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

ES: NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

RU: ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ устанавливать детское удерживающее устройство лицом назад на сиденье автомобиля, оборудованном фронтальной подушкой безопасности, если ПОДУШКА НЕ ОТКЛЮЧЕНА! Это может привести к СМЕРТИ или СЕРЬЕЗНЫМ ТРАВМАМ РЕБЕНКА.

NO: Bakovervendt barnesikringsutstyr må ALDRI brukes på et sete med AKTIV KOLLISJONSPUTE foran, da det kan føre til at BARNET utsettes for LIVSFARE og fare for ALVORLIGE SKADER.

PT: NUNCA use um sistema de retenção para crianças voltado para trás num banco protegido com um AIRBAG ACTIVO na frente do mesmo, poderá ocorrer a PERDA DE VIDA ou FERIMENTOS GRAVES na CRIANÇA.

IT: Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESioni GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

EL: ΠΟΤΕ μη χρησιμοποιείτε παιδικό κάθισμα ασφαλείας με φορά προς τα πίσω σε κάθισμα που προστατεύεται από μετωπικό ΕΝΕΡΓΟ ΑΕΡΟΣΑΚΟ, διότι το παιδί μπορεί να υποστεί ΘΑΝΑΣΙΜΟ ή ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ.
PL: NIE WOLNO montować fotelika dziecięcego zwróconego tylem do kierunku jazdy na fotelu, przed którym znajduje się WŁĄCZONA PODUSZKA POWIETRZNA. Niezastosowanie się do tego zalecenia może być przyczyną ŚMIERCY lub POWAŻNYCH OBRAŻEN u DZIECKA.

TR: Arkaya bakan bir çocuk emniyet sistemini KESİNLİKLE önünde bir AKTİF HAVA YASTIĞI ile korunmakta olan bir koltukta kullanmayınız. ÇOCUK ÖLEBİLİR veya AĞIR ŞEKİLDE YARALANABİLİR.

UK: НІКОЛИ не використовуйте систему безпеки для дітей, що встановлюється обличчям назад, на сидінні з УВІМКНЕНОЮ ПОДУШКОЮ БЕЗПЕКИ, інакше це може призвести до СМЕРТІ чи СЕРЙОЗНОГО ТРАВМУВАННЯ ДИТИНИ.

HU: SOHA ne használjon hátrafelé nézô biztonsági gyerekülést előlrôl AKTÍV LÉGZSÁKKAL védett üléson, mert a GYERMEK HALÁLÁT vagy KOMOLY SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.

HR: NIKADA nemojte koristiti sustav zadržavanja za djecu okrenut prema natrag na sjedalu s AKTIVNIM ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, to bi moglo dovesti do SMRTI ili OZBILJNIJIH OZLJEDA za DJETE.

SL: NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega varnostnega sedeža, obrnjenega v nasprotni smeri vožnje, na sedež z AKTIVNO ČELNO ZRAČNO BLAZINO, saj pri tem obstaja nevarnost RESNIH ali SMRTNIH POŠKODB za OTROKA.

SR: NIKADA ne koristiti bezbednosni sistem za decu u kome su decu okrenuta unazad na sedištu sa AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred sedišta zato što DETE može da NASTRADA ili da se TEŠKO POVREDI.

MK: НИКОГАШ не користете детско седиште свртено наназад на седиште заштитено со АКТИВНО ВОЗДУШНО ПЕРНИЧЕ пред него, затоа што детето може ДА ЗАГИНЕ или да биде ТЕШКО ПОВРЕДЕНО.

BG: НИКОГА не използвайте детска седалка, гледаща назад, върху седалка, която е защитена чрез АКТИВНА ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА пред нея - може да се стигне до СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на ДЕТЕТО.

RO: Nu utilizați NICIODATĂ un scaun pentru copil îndreptat spre partea din spate a mașinii pe un scaun protejat de un AIRBAG ACTIV în fața sa; acest lucru poate duce la DECESUL sau VÂTĂMAREA GRAVĂ a COPILULUI.

CS: NIKDY nepoužívejte dětský zádržný systém instalovaný proti směru jízdy na sedadle, které je chráněno před sedadlem AKTIVNÍM AIRBAGEM. Mohlo by dojít k VÁŽNÉMU PORANĚNÍ nebo ÚMRTÍ DÍTĚTE.

SK: NIKDY nepoužívajte detskú sedačku otočenú vzad na sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNYM AIRBAGOM, pretože môže dôjsť k SMRTI alebo VÁŽNYM ZRANENIAM DIEŤAŤA.

LT: JOKIU BŪDU nemontuokite atgal atgręžtos vaiko tvirtinimo sistemos sėdynėje, prieš kurią išrenta AKTYVI ORO PAGALVĖ, nes VAIKAS GALI ŽŪTI arba RIMTAI SUSIŽALOTI.
LV: NEKĀDĀ GADĪJUMĀ neizmantojiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti sēdvietā, kas tiek aizsargāta ar tās priekšā uzstādītu AKTĪVU DROŠĪBAS SPILVENU, jo pretējā gadījumā BĒRNS var gūt SMAGAS TRAUMAS vai IET BOJĀ.

ET: ÄRGE kasutage tahapoole suunatud lapsetuurvaistet istmel, mille ees on AKTIIVSE TURVAPADJAGA kaitstud iste, sest see võib põhjustada LAPSE SURMA või TÕSISE VIGASTUSE.

MT: QATT tuża trażżin għat-tfal li jħares lejn in-naħa ta' wara fuq sit protett b’AIRBAG ATTIV quddiemu; dan jista’ jikkawża l-MEWT jew ĠRIEĦI SERJI li t-TFAL.

Beyond the warning required by ECE R94.02, for safety reasons a forward-facing child restraint system must only be used subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table 66.

The airbag label is located on both sides of the front passenger sun visor.

Airbag deactivation 62.

Front airbag system

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

⚠️ Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.

Seat position 46. Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

Side airbag system
The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

### Warning
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

### Notice
Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

### Curtain airbag system
The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

### Warning
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.
Airbag deactivation

The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table 66. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.

The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the right side of the instrument panel.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:

- **OFF**: front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator OFF illuminates continuously in the centre console
- **ON**: front passenger airbag is active

⚠️ Danger

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table 66.

Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.

If the control indicator OFF illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately.

Consult a workshop immediately if neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.
Status remains until the next change.
Control indicator for airbag deactivation 108.

**Child restraints**

**Child restraint systems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Danger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If using a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag system for the front passenger seat must be deactivated. This also applies to certain forward-facing child restraint systems as indicated in the tables 66.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Airbag deactivation 62, Airbag label 57.

We recommend a child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle. For further information, contact your workshop.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

Child restraint systems can be fastened with:
- Three-point seat belt
- ISOFIX brackets
- Top-tether

**Three-point seat belt**

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. Depending on the size of the used child restraint systems, up to three child restraint systems can be attached to the rear seats 66.
Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the ISOFIX table 66.

ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest.

An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according UN Regulation No. 129.

All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, i-Size table 66.

Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.

**Top-tether fastening eyes**

Top-tether fastening eyes are marked with the symbol 🕒 for a child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether fastening eyes. The strap must run between the two guide rods of the head restraint.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF 66.

**Selecting the right system**

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the
child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Suitable are restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.

The following child restraints are recommended for the following weight classes:

Maxi Cosi Cabriofix for children up to 13 kg for group 0, group 0+ and Duo Plus for children from 13 kg to 18 kg in group I.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following tables.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Notice
Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.
Child restraint installation locations

Permissible options for fastening a child restraint system with a three-point seat belt

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight and age class</th>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On rear outboard seats</th>
<th>On rear centre seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>activated airbag</td>
<td>deactivated airbag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 0: up to 10 kg or approx. 10 months</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U\textsuperscript{1,2}</td>
<td>U/L\textsuperscript{3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 0+: up to 13 kg or approx. 2 years</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U\textsuperscript{1,2}</td>
<td>U/L\textsuperscript{3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I: 9 to 18 kg or approx. 8 months to 4 years</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U\textsuperscript{1,2}</td>
<td>U/L\textsuperscript{3,4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group II: 15 to 25 kg or approx. 3 to 7 years</td>
<td>U\textsuperscript{1,2}</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U/L\textsuperscript{3,4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group III: 22 to 36 kg or approx. 6 to 12 years</td>
<td>U\textsuperscript{1,2}</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U/L\textsuperscript{3,4}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

U: universal suitability in conjunction with three-point seat belt
L: suitable for particular child restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories. The child restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type (refer to the vehicle type list of the child restraint system)
X: no child restraint system permitted in this weight class
\textsuperscript{1}: move seat forwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point
move seat height adjustment upwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt is tight on the buckle side

move the respective front seat ahead of the child restraint system forwards as far as necessary

adjust the respective headrest as necessary or remove if required

### Permissible options for fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system with ISOFIX brackets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight and age class</th>
<th>Size class</th>
<th>Fixture</th>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On rear outboard seats</th>
<th>On rear centre seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 0: up to 10 kg or approx. 10 months</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>ISO/L2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>ISO/L1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E</td>
<td>ISO/R1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 0+: up to 13 kg or approx. 2 years</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>ISO/R1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>ISO/R2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>ISO/R3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I: 9 to 18 kg or approx. 8 months to 4 years</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>ISO/R2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL³, IL³, IUF³, IUF³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>ISO/R3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL³, IUF³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>ISO/F2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B1</td>
<td>ISO/F2X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>ISO/F3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight and age class</td>
<td>Size class</td>
<td>Fixture</td>
<td>On front passenger seat</td>
<td>On rear outboard seats</td>
<td>On rear centre seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Group II: 15 to 25 kg**  
or approx. 3 to 7 years  |            |         | activated airbag         | deactivated airbag    | IL³,⁴             |
|                      | A – ISO/F3 |         | X                        | X                     |                   |
|                      | B – ISO/F2 |         |                          |                       |                   |
|                      | B1 – ISO/F2X |     |                          |                       |                   |
|                      | C – ISO/R3 |         |                          |                       |                   |
|                      | D – ISO/R2 |         |                          |                       |                   |
|                      | E – ISO/R1 |         |                          |                       |                   |
| **Group III: 22 to 36 kg**  
or approx. 6 to 12 years |            |         | activated airbag         | deactivated airbag    | IL³,⁴             |
|                      | F – ISO/F4 |         | X                        | X                     |                   |
|                      | G – ISO/F5 |         |                          |                       |                   |
|                      | H – ISO/F6 |         |                          |                       |                   |
|                      | I – ISO/F7 |         |                          |                       |                   |
|                      | J – ISO/F8 |         |                          |                       |                   |

IL: suitable for particular ISOFIX restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories. The ISOFIX restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type (refer to the vehicle type list of the child restraint system).

IUF: suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this weight class.

X: no ISOFIX child restraint system approved in this weight class.

1: move seat forwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point.

2: move seat height adjustment upwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt is tight on the buckle side.

3: move the respective front seat ahead of the child restraint system forwards as far as necessary.

4: adjust the respective headrest as necessary or remove if required.

**ISOFIX size class and seat device**

A – ISO/F3: forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

B – ISO/F2: forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

B1 – ISO/F2X: forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

C – ISO/R3: rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 18 kg.

D – ISO/R2: rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 18 kg.

E – ISO/R1: rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg.
F – ISO/L1 : left lateral facing position child restraint system (carry-cot)
G – ISO/L2 : right lateral facing position child restraint system (carry-cot)

Permissible options for fitting an i-Size child restraint system with ISOFIX brackets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On rear outboard seats</th>
<th>On rear centre seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i-Size child restraint systems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activated airbag</td>
<td>deactivated airbag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>i - U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

i - U : suitable for i-Size 'universal' forward and rearward facing child restraint systems
X : seating position not suitable for i-Size 'universal' child restraint systems
Storage compartments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage compartments</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glovebox</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cupholders</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front storage</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armrest storage</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment cover</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear floor storage cover</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lashing eyes</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo management system</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety net</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning triangle</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First aid kit</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof rack system</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof rack</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loading information</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning**

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments. Otherwise, the storage compartment lid could open and vehicle occupants could be injured by objects being thrown around in the event of hard braking, a sudden change in direction or an accident.

Glovebox

The glovebox features a pen holder, a coin holder and an adapter for the locking wheel nuts.

The glovebox may also contain a CD player and a tool for removing the fuse cover with power connector.

The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

Cupholders

Cupholders are located in the centre console.
Depending on the version, cupholders are located under a cover in the centre console. Slide cover backwards.

**Front storage**

A storage compartment is located next to the steering wheel.

**Armrest storage**

Storage under the front armrest

Press button to fold up the armrest. The armrest must be in rearmost position.
Load compartment

Depending on the equipment, the rear seat backrest is divided into two or three parts. All parts can be folded down.

Before folding rear seat backrests, execute the following if necessary:

- 5-door hatchback: remove the load compartment cover 78.
- Sports Tourer: remove roller blind 78.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down 45.
- Remove the rear head restraints to have the backrests fully rest on the seat cushions 45.

Load compartment extension (two-part rear seat backrest), 5-door Hatchback

- Guide the seat belts of the outer seats through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.
- Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.
- Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.
The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

⚠️ Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

Load compartment extension (three-part rear seat backrest), 5-door Hatchback

- Fold up the rear armrest.

⚠️ Warning

Take care when folding down the right outer seat backrest if the centre seat backrest is already folded down. Risk of injury due to bolt protruding from the inner side of the backrest.
Guide the seat belts of the outer seats through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.

- Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

⚠️ Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.
Load compartment extension (two-part rear seat backrest), Sports Tourer

- Insert latch plates of the outer seat belts into side holder to protect the belts against damage, see illustration.

- Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

⚠️ Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.
The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

Load compartment extension (three-part rear seat backrest), Sports Tourer
- Fold up the rear centre armrest.

Pull the loop and fold down the backrest of the centre seat.

Insert latch plates of the outer seat belts into side holder to protect the belts against damage, see illustration.

Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

⚠️ Warning

Take care when folding down the right outer seat backrest if the centre seat backrest is already folded down. Risk of injury due to bolt protruding from the inner side of the backrest.
Alternatively fold seat backrests from the load compartment: pull switch on left or right sidewall of the load compartment to fold the corresponding part of the rear seat backrest.

**Warning**

Take care when operating the rear backrests from the load compartment. The backrest is folded with considerable power. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.

- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

**Warning**

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.
Load compartment cover
Do not place any objects on the cover.

5-door hatchback

Removing

Unhook retaining straps from tailgate.

Lift cover at the rear and push it upwards at the front.
Remove the cover.

Fitting
Engage cover in side guides and fold downwards. Attach retaining straps to tailgate.

Sports Tourer

Closing roller blind
Pull the roller blind using the handle towards the rear and upwards until it engages in the sideward retainers.

Opening roller blind
Pull the handle at the end of the roller blind to the rear and downwards. It rolls up automatically.
Removing roller blind

Open the roller blind. Pull the release lever on the right side up and hold it. Lift the roller blind first on the right side and remove from retainers.

The removed roller blind can be stored under the rear floor cover as shown in the illustration. Insert the left side of the rolled up cover first in the front right recess, pull the release lever up and insert the right side in the front left recess.

Rear floor storage cover 79.

Installing roller blind

Insert the left side of the roller blind in the recess, then pull the release lever up and hold and insert the right side of the roller blind in the recess and engage.

Rear floor storage cover

Rear floor cover

5-door Hatchback

The rear floor cover can be removed. Raise cover at the rear and slightly rotate at one side before removing.
Sports Tourer

Pull the handle and fold the rear part of the cover forward.

Set up the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests.

Lashing eyes

The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

5-door Hatchback

First remove the rear floor storage cover to get access to the lashing eyes.

On vehicles equipped with a spare wheel, the front lashing eyes are located at the sidewalls.

On vehicles equipped with a spare wheel, the front lashing eyes are located at the sidewalls.

On vehicles equipped with tyre repair kit, the front lashing eyes are located underneath the rear floor cover behind the rear seats. To get access to the lashing eyes, open the perforated parts of the cover by using the screwdriver. Vehicle tools 3 236.

Stick the screwdriver through the cover as shown in the illustration and fold up the perforated part of the cover.

Fold up the lashing eyes by using the screwdriver.
Sports Tourer

Front and rear lashing eyes are located at the sidewalls. Fold up the lashing eyes to use and fold down when not required.

Cargo management system

The FlexOrganizer is a flexible system for dividing up the load compartment.

The system consists of:
- adapters
- mesh pockets
- hooks

Service box

The components are fitted in rails on both side panels using adapters and hooks.

Installation of adapters in the rails

Fold open the handle plate, insert the adapter into the upper and lower groove of the rail and move to the required position. Turn the handle plate upwards to lock the adapter. To remove, turn the handle plate down and move out of the rail.

Variable partition net

Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. Stick together the halves of the net rods.

To install, push rods together a little and insert into the relevant openings in the adapters.

To remove, press the net rods together and remove from the adapters.
Net pocket

Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. The net pocket can be suspended from the adapters.

Installation of hooks in the rails

Insert the hook in the desired position first in the upper groove of the rail and then press in the lower groove. To remove, first pull out of the upper groove.

Service box

Install two hooks in the upper rail. Insert the upper brackets of the box from above into the hooks.
Alternatively install both hooks in the lower rail. Plug in the lower brackets of the box from above into the lower hooks.

**Strap set**

Insert the adapters of the strap set in a rail. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

The strap set has two locks to open. The belt can be tightened.

**Safety net**

The safety net is available on the Sports tourer and can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats.

Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

**Installation**

**Behind the rear seats**

- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the rear seats: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.

- Attach the hooks of safety net straps in loops underneath the rear floor cover behind the rear seats. To get access to the loops, open the perforated parts in the floor cover on both sides by using the screwdriver and fold up the loops. Attach the hooks to the loops.

- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.

- Rear seat backrests must be raised up.
Behind the front seats

- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the front seats: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.
- Attach hooks of safety net straps to loops in the floor in front of the rear seats. To get access to the loops, push in the perforated parts in the floor cover on both sides. Attach the hooks to the loops.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Push down head restraints and fold down rear seat backrests ⦿ 72.

Removal

- Pull the flap at the tightener on both sides to release the straps. Detach hooks from the eyes.
- Unhook the safety net rods from the brackets in the roof frame.
- Roll up the net and secure with a strap.

Stowing

The removed safety net can be stored under the rear floor cover ⦿ 79.
Warning triangle

5-door hatchback

Stow the warning triangle in the recess in front of the tailgate.

Sports Tourer

Stow the warning triangle in the recess under the rear floor cover on the right or left side.

First aid kit

Stow the first aid kit in the compartment in the left side wall.

Illustration shows 5-door Hatchback.
To open the compartment, disengage cover and open.

Illustration shows Sports Tourer.
To open the cover turn knob.

Roof rack system

Roof rack
For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop.

Mounting roof rack

5-door Hatchback, Sports Tourer

Open all doors.
Mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle body.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.
Remove the roof rack when not in use.

⚠️ Warning

Sports Tourer
Roof railings are a styling element only and not designed to carry any load. Installation of roof racks or other accessory is not permitted. Use the designated mounting points in the door frames exclusively.
Loading information

- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Make sure that the backrests are securely engaged, i.e. no longer showing the red markings on the side near the release lever. If objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Secure objects with lashing straps attached to lashing eyes 80.
- Secure loose objects in the load compartment to prevent them from sliding.
- When transporting objects in the load compartment, the backrests of the rear seats must not be angled forward.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Secure objects with lashing straps attached to lashing eyes 380.
- Secure loose objects in the load compartment to prevent them from sliding.
- When transporting objects in the load compartment, the backrests of the rear seats must not be angled forward.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Sports Tourer: install safety net when transporting objects in the load compartment.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.

⚠️ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.

- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate 263) and the EC kerb weight.

To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the weights table at the front of this manual.

The EC kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (fuel tank 90% full).

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a
Storage

detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.
Do not drive faster than 75 mph.
The permissible roof load is 75 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.
## Instruments and controls

### Controls
- Steering wheel adjustment .......................... 90
- Steering wheel controls ............................. 90
- Heated steering wheel ............................... 91
- Horn ........................................... 91
- Windscreen wiper/washer ......................... 91
- Rear window wiper/washer ....................... 93
- Outside temperature ................................ 94
- Clock ......................................... 94
- Power outlets .................................... 96
- Power connector .................................. 97
- Ashtrays ....................................... 98

### Warning lights, gauges and indicators
- Instrument cluster ............................... 100
- Speedometer .................................. 103
- Odometer ...................................... 104
- Trip odometer ................................ 104
- Tachometer .................................. 105
- Fuel gauge ................................... 105
- Engine coolant temperature gauge .......... 105
- Service display ................................ 106
- Control indicators ............................. 107
- Turn signal ................................... 107
- Seat belt reminder ............................. 107
- Airbag and belt tensioners .................... 108
- Airbag deactivation ............................ 108
- Charging system ................................ 108
- Malfunction indicator light .................... 109
- Brake and clutch system ....................... 109
- Electric parking brake ......................... 109
- Electric parking brake fault ................... 109
- Antilock brake system (ABS) .................. 110
- Gear shifting .................................. 110
- Following distance .............................. 110
- Lane keep assist ................................ 110
- Electronic Stability Control off ............... 110
- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system .... 110
- Traction Control system off ............... 111
- Preheating ....................................... 111
- Tyre pressure monitoring system ............. 111
- Engine oil pressure ............................ 111
- Low fuel ........................................ 111
- Immobiliser .................................... 112
- Exterior light .................................. 112
- High beam ...................................... 112
- High beam assist ................................ 112
- LED headlights ................................ 112
- Fog light ....................................... 112
- Rear fog light .................................. 112
- Cruise control .................................. 112

### Information displays
- Driver Information Centre ..................... 113
- Info display ..................................... 118

### Vehicle messages
- Speed limiter ................................... 112
- Warning chimes ................................ 121
- Battery voltage ................................ 122

### Vehicle personalisation
- OnStar ......................................... 128

### Vehicle detected ahead
- Traffic sign assistant .......................... 113
- Door open ..................................... 113

### Information displays
- Driver Information Centre ..................... 113
- Info display ..................................... 118

### Vehicle messages
- Speed limiter ................................... 112
- Warning chimes ................................ 121
- Battery voltage ................................ 122

### Vehicle personalisation
- OnStar ......................................... 128
Controls

Steering wheel adjustment

Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering wheel controls

Driver Information Centre, some driver assistance systems, Infotainment system and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.

The illustrations show different versions.

Driver Information Centre 113.
Driver assistance systems 178.
Further information is available in the Infotainment manual.
Heated steering wheel

Activate heating by pressing *. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

The recommended grip areas of the steering wheel are heated quicker and to a higher temperature than the other areas.

Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system 159.

Horn

Press 📣.

Windscreen wiper/washer

Windscreen wiper with adjustable wiper interval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HI</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>interval wiping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position 1x.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.
Adjustable wiper interval

Wiper lever in position **INT**.
Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the desired wipe interval:

- short interval: turn adjuster wheel upwards
- long interval: turn adjuster wheel downwards

Windscreen wiper with rain sensor

- **HI**: fast
- **LO**: slow
- **AUTO**: automatic wiping with rain sensor
- **OFF**: off

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor

Wiper lever in position **AUTO**.
Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity:

- low sensitivity: turn adjuster wheel downwards
- high sensitivity: turn adjuster wheel upwards
Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

Rain sensor function can be activated or deactivated in the Vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.
**Info-Display** 118.
**Vehicle personalisation** 122.

---

**Windscreen washer**

Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.
**Washer fluid** 216.

---

**Rear window wiper/washer**

Turn outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:
**ON** : continuous operation
**INT** : intermittent operation
**OFF** : off

Do not use if the rear window is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.
Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 122.

Rear window washer

Push lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low.

Washer fluid 216

Outside temperature

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.

Illustration shows an example.

If outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

⚠️ Warning

The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.

Clock

Date and time are shown in the Info-Display.

Info-Display 118.
Graphic-Info-Display
Press MENU to open the respective audio menu.

Select Time and Date.

Set Time
Select Set Time to enter the respective submenu.
Select Auto Set at the bottom of the screen. Activate either On - RDS or Off (Manual).
If Off (Manual) is selected, adjust hours and minutes.
Repeatedly select 12-24 HR at the bottom of the screen to choose a time mode.
If the 12-hour mode is selected, a third column for AM and PM selection is displayed. Select the desired option.

Set Date
Select Set Date to enter the respective submenu.
Select Auto Set at the bottom of the screen. Activate either On - RDS or Off (Manual).
If Off (Manual) is selected, adjust the date settings.

7" Colour-Info-Display
Press ; and then select Settings.
Select Time and Date to display the respective submenu.

Set Time Format
To select the desired time format, touch the screen buttons 12 h or 24 h.

Set Date Format
To select the desired date format, select Set Date Format and choose between the available options in the submenu.

Auto Set
To choose whether time and date are to be set automatically or manually, select Auto Set.
For time and date to be set automatically, select On - RDS.
For time and date to be set manually, select Off - Manual. If Auto Set is set to Off - Manual, the submenu items Set Time and Set Date become available.

Set time and date
To adjust the time and date settings, select Set Time or Set Date.
Touch + and - to adjust the settings.
8” Colour-Info-Display

Press \( \equiv \) and then select the Settings icon.
Select Time and Date.

Set time
Select Set Time to enter the respective submenu.

Touch 12-24 Hr on the right side of the screen to select a time mode.
If 12-hour mode is selected, a third column for AM and PM setting is displayed. Select the desired option.

Set date
Select Set Date to enter the respective submenu.

Notice
If date information is automatically provided, this menu item is not available.

Select Auto Set at the bottom of the screen. Activate either On - RDS or Off - Manual.
If Off - Manual is selected, adjust the date by touching \( \wedge \) or \( \vee \).

Clock display
Select Clock Display to enter the respective submenu.
To turn off the digital clock display in the menus, select Off.

Power outlets

A 12 Volt power outlet is located in the centre console.
Sports Tourer: A 12 Volt power outlet is located at the left sidewall in the load compartment.
Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.
With ignition off, the power outlet is deactivated. Additionally, the power outlet is deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.
Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.
Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.
Do not damage the outlets by using unsuitable plugs.
Stop-start system \( \diamond \) 159.

USB charging port

Two USB ports for charging devices only are located in the back of the centre console.
Each socket provides 2.1 Ampere at five Volts.
Notice
The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

Power connector
The power connector (PowerFlex Bar) is attached on the instrument panel fuse box cover. A fragrance diffuser (AirWellness) or a phone holder can be attached to the power connector.
Further information regarding phone holder is available in the Infotainment manual.
Instruments and controls

Fragrance diffuser

1. Attach fragrance diffuser to upper side of the power connector (1) and swivel downwards to engage (2).

2. Press front button to activate and deactivate the fragrance diffuser. LED indicates activation.

3. To remove fragrance diffuser, press diffuser downwards and swivel backwards.

4. To replace fragrance pad, shift cartridge upwards and remove it.

5. Replace fragrance pad.

Ashtrays

Caution

To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.
A portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.
Warning lights, gauges and indicators

Instrument cluster
Depending on the version, two instrument clusters are available:
Midlevel instrument cluster
Instruments and controls

Uplevel instrument cluster
Overview

- Turn signal 107
- Seat belt reminder 107
- Airbag and belt tensioners 108
- Airbag deactivation 108
- Charging system 108
- Malfunction indicator light 109
- Brake and clutch system 109
- Electric parking brake 109
- Electric parking brake fault 109
- Antilock brake system (ABS) 110
- Gear shifting 110
- Following distance 110
- Lane keep assist 110
- Electronic Stability Control off 110

- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system 110
- Traction Control system off 111
- Preheating 111
- Tyre pressure monitoring system 111
- Engine oil pressure 111
- Low fuel 111
- Immobiliser 112
- Exterior light 112
- High beam 112
- High beam assist 112
- LED headlights 112
- Fog light 112
- Rear fog light 112
- Cruise control 112
- Vehicle detected ahead 112
- Speed limiter 112
- Traffic sign assistant 113
- Door open 113

Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed.
Instruments and controls

Odometer

The total recorded distance is displayed in miles.

Trip odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed on the trip computer page. Two trip odometer are selectable for different trips. Trip odometer counts up to 9,999 miles and then restarts at 0.

Select Info page \i\ by pressing Menu on the turn signal lever. Turn adjuster wheel on turn signal lever and select Trip 1 or Trip 2. Each trip odometer can be reset separately by pressing SET/CLR on the turn signal lever for a few seconds on the respective page.

Midlevel instrument cluster

Uplevel instrument cluster

Select Info page ⬆️ on main menu. Choose page Trip A or Trip B by pressing ✔️ on the steering wheel. Each trip odometer can be reset separately when ignition is on: select respective page, press ➔. Confirm by pressing ✔️.

Driver Information Centre ➙ 113.
Instruments and controls

**Tachometer**
Displays the engine speed.
Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

**Caution**
If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.

**Fuel gauge**
Displays the level in the fuel tank.
The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler flap is located.
Control indicator illuminates if the level in the tank is low. Refuel immediately if it flashes.
Never run the fuel tank dry.
Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity.

**Engine coolant temperature gauge**
Displays the coolant temperature.
50 : engine operating temperature not yet reached
central area : normal operating temperature
130 : temperature too high
Caution
If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

Service display
The engine oil life system informs when to change the engine oil and filter. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change will be indicated can vary considerably.

The remaining oil life duration menu is displayed in the Driver Information Centre 113.

On Midlevel display select the Settings Menu by pressing MENU on the turn signal lever. Turn the adjuster wheel to select the Remaining Oil Life page.

On Uplevel display select Info Menu by pressing ⇔ on steering wheel. Press ⇔ to select Remaining Oil Life page. Remaining oil life duration is indicated in percentage.

Reset
On Midlevel display press SET/CLR on turn signal lever for several seconds to reset. The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.
On Uplevel display press > on steering wheel to open the subfolder. Select Reset and confirm by pressing
for several seconds. The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.
The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed to allow proper functionality. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Next service
When the system has calculated that engine oil life has been diminished, Change Engine Oil Soon appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have engine oil and filter changed by a workshop within one week or 300 miles (whichever occurs first).

Service information 260.

Control indicators
The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:
red : danger, important reminder
yellow : warning, information, fault
green : confirmation of activation
blue : confirmation of activation
white : confirmation of activation

See all control indicators on different instrument clusters 100.

Turn signal
illumination or flashes green.

Illuminates briefly
The parking lights are switched on.

Flashes
A turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.
Rapid flashing: failure of a turn signal light or associated fuse, failure of turn signal light on trailer.
Bulb replacement 219, Fuses 230.

Seat belt reminder
Seat belt reminder on front seats
for driver’s seat illuminates or flashes red in the instrument cluster.

for front passenger seat illuminates or flashes red in the roof console, when seat is occupied.

Illuminates
After the ignition has been switched on until the seat belt has been fastened.

Flashes
After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt has been fastened.
Instruments and controls

Seat belt status on rear seats (vehicles with Midlevel display)

ิต illuminates or flashes white or grey in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

**Illuminates white**
Seat belt is unfastened.

**Illuminates grey**
Seat belt has been fastened.

**Flashes white or grey**
Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.
Fastening the seat belt ◇ 56.

Seat belt status on rear seats (vehicles with Uplevel display)

ิต illuminates green or grey or flashes yellow in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

**Illuminates grey**
Seat belt is unfastened.

**Illuminates green**
Seat belt has been fastened.

**Flashes yellow**
Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.
Fastening the seat belt ◇ 56.

**Airbag and belt tensioners**

ิ illuminates red.
When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a workshop. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of ณ.

**Warning**

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Belt pretensioners, airbag system ◇ 55, ◇ 57.

**Airbag deactivation**

ิ illuminates yellow.
The front passenger airbag is activated.

ิ illuminates yellow.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.
Airbag deactivation ◇ 62.

**Charging system**

ิ illuminates red.
Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.
Instruments and controls

**Illuminates when the engine is running**
Stop, switch off engine. Vehicle battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Malfunction indicator light**
ŭ illuminates or flashes yellow.
Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

**Illuminates when the engine is running**
Fault in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded.
On diesel engines the cleaning process of the diesel particle filter is potentially not possible.
Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

**Flashes when the engine is running**
Fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

**Brake and clutch system**
○ illuminates red.
The brake and clutch fluid level is too low, when manual parking brake is not applied 173.

**Warning**
Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Illuminates when the manual parking brake is applied and ignition is switched on 173.

**Electric parking brake fault**
ĉ illuminates or flashes yellow.
Illuminates when the engine is running with degraded performance 173.

**Flashes**
Electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Depress the brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing then applying the electric parking brake. If ĉ remains flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Electric parking brake**
ĉ illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates
Electric parking brake is applied 173.

**Flashes**
Electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.
\section*{Instruments and controls}

\subsection*{Warning}

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

\subsection*{Antilock brake system (ABS)}

\includegraphics[width=0.3\textwidth]{image1}

Illuminates yellow. Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If the control indicator does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

Antilock brake system $\Rightarrow 172$.

\subsection*{Gear shifting}

\includegraphics[width=0.3\textwidth]{image2}

$\Delta$ or $\nabla$ with the number of the next higher or lower gear is indicated, when up- or down-shifting is recommended.

\subsection*{Following distance}

$\Delta$ indicates the following distance setting of the alert timing sensitivity for the forward collision alert using filled distance bars.

Forward collision alert $\Rightarrow 181$.

\subsection*{Lane keep assist}

\includegraphics[width=0.3\textwidth]{image3}

$\Rightarrow$ illuminates green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

Illuminates green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Illuminates yellow

The system approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

Flashes yellow

The system recognizes that the lane is departed significantly.

Lane keep assist $\Rightarrow 201$

\subsection*{Electronic Stability Control off}

$\Rightarrow$ illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

\subsection*{Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system}

$\Rightarrow$ illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic Stability Control $\Rightarrow 176$, Traction Control system $\Rightarrow 175$. 
Traction Control system off

illuminate yellow.
The system is deactivated.

Preheating

illuminate yellow.
Preheating of Diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when control indicator extinguishes.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

illuminate or flashes yellow.

Illuminates
Tyre pressure loss. Stop immediately and check tyre pressure.

Flashes
Fault in system or tyre without pressure sensor mounted (e.g. spare wheel). After 60 to 90 seconds the control indicator illuminates continuously. Consult a workshop.

Engine oil pressure

illuminate red.
Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Caution

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and/or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Depress clutch.
2. Select neutral gear.
3. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
4. Switch off ignition.

Warning

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.
During an Autostop, the brake servo unit will still be operational.
Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Check oil level before seeking assistance of a workshop 214.

Low fuel

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates
Level in fuel tank is too low.

Flashes
Fuel used up. Refuel immediately. Never run the tank dry.
Refuelling 203.
Catalytic converter 165.
Instruments and controls

Bleeding the diesel fuel system

Immobiliser

Fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

Exterior light

The exterior lights are on.

High beam

Illuminated when high beam is on or during headlight flash.

High beam assist

The high beam assist is activated, see LED headlights.

LED headlights

Illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Fault in the system.
Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Flashes

System is switched to symmetrical low beam.
Control indicator flashes for approx. four seconds after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for symmetrical headlight.

Fog light

The front fog lights are on.

Rear fog light

The rear fog light is on.

Cruise control

Cruise control is active. Set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle detected ahead

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

Illuminates yellow

The distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

Forward collision alert

Speed limiter

Illuminates white or green.

Illuminates white

The system is on.
Illuminates green
Speed limiter is active. Set speed is indicated near symbol.
Speed limiter 180.

Traffic sign assistant
Displays detected traffic signs as control indicator.
Traffic sign assistant 197.

Door open
Illuminates red.
A door or the tailgate is open.

Information displays

Driver Information Centre
The Driver Information Centre is located in the instrument cluster.
Depending on the version and the instrument cluster, the Driver Information Centre is available as Midlevel display or Uplevel display.
Driver Information Centre indicates depending on the equipment:
- overall and trip odometer
- vehicle information
- trip/fuel information
- driving economy information
- vehicle and warning messages
- audio and infotainment information
- phone information
- navigation information
- vehicle settings

Midlevel display

Main menus are:
- Trip/fuel information, displayed by / \, see description below.
- Vehicle information, displayed by , see description below.
- Eco information, displayed by , see description below.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill and some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.
Selecting menus and functions
The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.

Press MENU to switch between the main menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu of the main menu or to set a numeric value.

Press SET/CLR to select and confirm a function.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre if required. Confirm messages by pressing SET/CLR. Vehicle messages 120.

Uplevel display

Main menus are:
- Trip/fuel information, displayed by Info, see description below.
- Audio information, displayed by Audio, see description below.
- Phone information, displayed by Phone, see description below.
- Navigation information, displayed by Navigation, see description below.
- Vehicle information, displayed by Options, see description below.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill and some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

Selecting menus and functions
The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right side in the steering wheel.

Press < to open main menu page.
Select a main menu page with ▲ or ▼.
Confirm a main menu page with ✔.
Once a main menu page is selected, press ▲ or ▼ to select subpages. Press ▼ to open a next folder of the selected subpage. Press ▲ or ▼ to select functions or to set a numeric value, if required. Press ✔ to select and confirm a function.

Once a main menu page is selected, this selection remains stored until another main menu page is selected. Subpages are changed by pressing ▼ or ▲.

Vehicle and service messages are popped-up in the Driver Information Centre if required. Confirm messages by pressing ✔. Vehicle messages 120.

Trip/fuel information menu, / i \ or Info
The following list contains all possible Info Menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display, some functions are symbolised.

Turn the adjuster wheel or press ▲ or ▼ to select a page:
- Trip odometer 1/2 or A/B
- Average fuel consumption
- Average speed
- Digital speed
- Fuel range
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Remaining oil life
- Tyre pressure
- Traffic sign assistant
- Following distance
- Timer
- Outside temperature

On Midlevel display the pages Remaining Oil Life, Tyre Pressure, Traffic Sign Assistant and Following Distance are displayed in the Vehicle information menu, select 🔄.

Trip odometer 1/2 or A/B
Trip odometer displays the current distance since a certain reset. Trip odometer counts up to a distance of 9,999 miles then restarts at 0.

To reset on Midlevel display, press SET/CLR for a few seconds.
To reset on Uplevel display, press > and confirm with ✔.

The information of trip odometer page 1/A and 2/B can be reset separately while the respective display is active.

Average Fuel Consumption
Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

To reset on Midlevel display, press SET/CLR for a few seconds, on Uplevel display, press > and confirm with ✔.
Average speed
Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.
To reset on Midlevel display, press SET/CLR for a few seconds, on Uplevel display, press > and confirm with √.

Digital speed
Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

Fuel range
Range is calculated from current fuel level and current consumption. The display shows average values.
After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay. When the level in the fuel tank is low, a message appears on the display and the control indicator ⬂ in the fuel gauge illuminates. When the fuel tank must be refuelled immediately, a warning message appears and remains on the display. Additionally, the control indicator ⬂ in the fuel gauge flashes ⬂ 111.

Instantaneous Fuel Consumption
Display of the instantaneous consumption.

Remaining Oil Life
Indicates an estimate of the oil’s useful life. The number in percentage means the remainder of current oil life ⬂ 106.

Tyre Pressure
Checks tyre pressure of all wheels during driving ⬂ 239.

Traffic sign assistant
Displays the detected traffic signs for the current route section ⬂ 197.

Following Distance
Displays the distance in seconds to a preceding moving vehicle ⬂ 184. If Adaptive cruise control is active this page shows the following distance setting instead.

Timer
To start and stop, press √. To reset, press > and confirm reset.

Outside temperature
Display of current outside temperature.

Eco information menu, ⬃
- Top consumers
- Economy trend
- Eco index
On Uplevel display the pages Top Consumers, Economy Trend and Eco index, are displayed in the Trip/fuel information menu, select Info.

Top Consumers
List of top comfort consumers currently switched on is displayed in descending order. Fuel saving potential is indicated. During sporadic driving conditions, the engine will activate the heated rear window automatically to increase the engine load. In this event, the heated rear window is indicated as one of the top consumers, without activation by the driver.
Economy Trend

Displays the average consumption development over a distance of 31 miles. Filled segments display the consumption in 3.1 mile steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

Economy index
The current fuel consumption is indicated on an economic scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the Eco area. The more segments are filled, the higher the fuel consumption.

Audio menu
Audio menu enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source.
See Infotainment manual.

Phone menu
Phone menu enables managing and performing of phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating handsfree phoning.
See Infotainment manual.

Navigation menu
Navigation menu enables route guidance.
See Infotainment manual.

Vehicle information menu, or Options
The following list contains all possible Options Menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display some functions are symbolised.

Turn the adjuster wheel or press or to select a page and follow the instructions given in the submenus:
- Units
- Info pages
- Speed warning
- Tyre loading
- Software information

Units
Press SET/CLR or while units is displayed. Select imperial or metric units by turning adjuster wheel or pressing . Confirm by pressing SET/CLR or .

Info pages
Press while Info pages is displayed. A list of all items in the Info Menu is displayed. Select the functions to be displayed in the Info page by pressing . Selected pages have a in a checkbox. Non-viewable functions have a blank checkbox. See Info Menu above.
Instruments and controls

Speed warning

The speed warning function alerts the driver when a set speed is exceeded.

To set the speed warning, press SET/CLR or > while the page is displayed. Turn the adjuster wheel or press ▲ or ▼ to select and adjust the value. Press SET/CLR or ▶ to set the speed. Once the speed is set, this feature can be turned off by pressing SET/CLR or ▶ while viewing this page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed with a chime.

Tyre Load

The tyre pressure category according to the actual tyre inflation pressure can be selected  

Software information
Displays the open source software information.

Valet mode

Some functions of the Driver Information Centre and the Info-Display can be limited for some drivers.

Activation or deactivation of valet mode can be set in the menu Settings in the vehicle personalisation menu.

Vehicle personalisation  122.

For more information see Infotainment manual.

Info display

The Info-Display is located in the instrument panel near the instrument cluster.

Depending on the vehicle configuration the vehicle has a
- Graphic-Info-Display
- 7" Colour-Info-Display with touch-screen functionality
- 8" Colour-Info-Display with touch-screen functionality

The vehicle has a 7" Colour-Info-Display with touch-screen functionality.

The vehicle has a 8" Colour-Info-Display with touch-screen functionality.

The Info displays can indicate:
- time  94
- outside temperature  94
- date  94
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment manual
- indication of rear view camera  195
- indication of parking assist instructions  186
Instruments and controls

- navigation, see description in the Infotainment manual
- system messages
- settings for vehicle personalisation 122

Graphic-Info-Display

Press ⌈ to switch on the display.
Press MENU to select main menu page.
Turn MENU to select a menu page.
Press MENU to confirm a selection.
Press BACK to exit a menu without changing a setting.

7” Colour-Info-Display

Selecting menus and settings
Menus and settings are accessed via the display.

Press ⌈ to switch on the display.
Press ⌉ to display the homepage.
Tap required menu display icon with the finger.
Tap a respective icon to confirm a selection.
Tap ↑ to return to the next higher menu level.
Press ⌉ to return to the homepage.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.
Vehicle personalisation 122.

8” Colour-Info-Display

Selecting menus and settings
There are three options to operate the display:
- via buttons below the display
- by touching the touchscreen with the finger
- via speech recognition

Button operation

Press ⌈ to switch on the display.
Press \( \odot \) to display the homepage. 
Turn MENU to select a menu display icon or a function or to scroll a submenu list. 
Press MENU to confirm a selection. 
Press BACK to exit a menu without changing a setting. 
Press \( \odot \) to return to the homepage. 
For further information, see Infotainment manual.

**Touchscreen operation**
Display must be switched on by pressing \( \odot \). Press \( \odot \) to select homepage. 
Tap required menu display icon or a function with the finger. 
Scroll a longer submenu list with the finger up or down. 
Confirm a required function or selection by tapping. 
Tap \( \odot \) on the display to exit a menu without changing a setting. 
Press \( \odot \) to return to the homepage. 
For further information, see Infotainment manual.

**Speech recognition**
Description see Infotainment manual.
Vehicle personalisation \( \Rightarrow \) 122.

**Valet mode**
Some functions of the Driver Information Centre and the Info-Display can be limited for some drivers.
Activation or deactivation of valet mode can be set in the menu Settings in the vehicle personalisation menu. 
Vehicle personalisation \( \Rightarrow \) 122. 
For more information see Infotainment manual.

**Vehicle messages**
Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning and signal chime.

On Midlevel display press SET/CLR on the turn signal lever to confirm a message.
On Uplevel display press \( \checkmark \) on the steering wheel to confirm a message.

**Vehicle and service messages**

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

The system displays messages regarding the following topics:

- service messages
- fluid levels
- anti-theft alarm system
- brakes
- drive systems
- ride control systems
- brake control systems
- electronic key system
- keyless starting
- seat belts
- airbag systems
- engine and transmission
- tyre pressure
- diesel particle filter
- vehicle battery status
- stop-start system

**Messages in the Colour-Info-Display**

Some important messages may appear additionally in the Colour-Info-Display. Press the multifunction knob to confirm a message. Some messages only pop-up for a few seconds.

**Warning chimes**

**When starting the engine or whilst driving**

Only one warning chime will sound at a time.

The warning chime regarding not fastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

- If seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied.
• If approaching a vehicle ahead too closely.
• If a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded.
• If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre.
• If the electronic key is not in the passenger compartment.
• If the parking assist detects an object.
• If an unintended lane change occurs.
• If the diesel particle filter has reached the maximum filling level.
• If safety function of the power tailgate detects obstacles in the moving area.

When the vehicle is parked and/or the driver's door is opened
• With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop
• If the driver's door is opened.
• If any condition for an autostart is not fulfilled.

Battery voltage
When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off any electrical consumers which are not required for a safe drive, e.g. seat heating, heated rear window or other main consumers.
2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message will disappear after the engine has been started twice without a voltage drop.
If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Vehicle personalisation
The vehicle's behaviour can be personalised by changing the settings in the Info-Display.
Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key. Memorised settings 23.
Depending on vehicle equipment and country-specific regulations some of the functions described below may not be available.
Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

Personal settings
Graphic-Info-Display
Press MENU to open the respective menu.
Select Settings, scroll through the list and select Vehicle Settings.
In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

**Vehicle Settings**

- **Climate and Air Quality**
  - **Auto Fan Max Speed:** Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.
  - **Auto Heated Seats:** Automatically activates the seat heating.
  - **Auto Demist:** Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.
  - **Auto Rear Demist:** Automatically activates heated rear window.

- **Park Assist / Collision Detection**
  - **Park Assist:** Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.
  - **Side Blind Zone Alert:** Activates or deactivates side blind zone alert.

- **Comfort Settings**
  - **Auto Memory Recall:** Changes the settings to the recall of memorised settings for power seat adjustment.
  - **Easy Exit Driver Seat:** Activates or deactivates easy exit function of the power seat.
  - **Chime Volume:** Changes the volume of warning chimes.
  - **Personalisation by Driver:** Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
  - **Rain Sense Wipers:** Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with rain sensor.

- **Exterior Ambient Lighting**
  - **Exterior lighting by unlocking:** Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.
  - **Duration upon exit of vehicle:** Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.
  - **Left or Right Hand Traffic:** Changes between lighting for left or right-hand traffic.
  - **Adaptive Forward Lighting:** Changes the settings of the functions of the LED headlights.

- **Power Door Locks**
  - **Stop door lock if door open:** Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.
  - **Auto Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after switching on ignition.
  - **Rear Auto Wipe in Reverse:** Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.
Instruments and controls

Delayed Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function. This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until all doors are closed.

- Remote Lock, Unlock, and Start
  Remote Unlock Feedback: Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
  Remote Lock Feedback: Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.
  Remote Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.
  Auto Relock Doors: Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.
  Remote Window Operation: Activates or deactivates the operation of power windows with remote control.
  Passive Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

Passive Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and an electronic key has been removed from the vehicle.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alarm: Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the electronic key remains in the vehicle.

- Restore Factory Settings: Resets all settings to the default settings.
- Valet Mode: See Infotainment manual.

Personal settings
7” Colour-Info-Display
Press ☰, select Settings and then Vehicle on the touch-screen.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

Vehicle
- Climate & Air Quality
  Auto Fan Max Speed: Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.

Auto Heated Seats: Automatically activates the seat heating.

Auto Defog: Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.
Auto Rear Defog: Automatically activates heated rear window.

Collision / Detection Systems
- Park Assist: Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.
- Side Blind Zone Alert: Activates or deactivates side blind zone alert.

Comfort and Convenience
- Auto Memory Recall: Changes the settings to the recall of memorised settings for power seat adjustment.
- Easy Exit Driver Seat: Activates or deactivates easy exit function of the power seat.
- Chime Volume: Changes the volume of warning chimes.
- Personalization By Driver: Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
- Rain Sense Wipers: Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with rain sensor.

Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear: Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

Lighting
- Vehicle Locator Lights: Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.
- Exit Lighting: Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.
- Left or Right Hand Traffic: Changes between lighting for left or right-hand traffic.
- Adaptive Forward Lighting: Changes the settings of the functions of the LED headlights.

Power Door Locks
- Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out: Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.
- Auto Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after switching on ignition.

Delayed Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function. This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until all doors are closed.

Remote Lock, Unlock, Start
- Remote Unlock Light Feedback: Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
- Remote Lock Feedback: Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.
- Remote Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.
- Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors: Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.
- Remote Window Operation: Activates or deactivates the operation of power windows with remote control.
- Passive Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only
the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

**Passive Door Lock**: Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and an electronic key has been removed from the vehicle.

**Remote Left in Vehicle Alert**: Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the electronic key remains in the vehicle.

**Personal settings**

**8” Colour-Info-Display**

Press then select the **SETTINGS** icon.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

**Vehicle**

- **Climate and Air Quality**
  - **Auto Fan Speed**: Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.
  - **Auto Heated Seats**: Automatically activates the seat heating.
  - **Auto Demist**: Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.

- **Collision / Detection Systems**
  - **Park Assist**: Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.
  - **Side Blind Zone Alert**: Activates or deactivates side blind zone alert.

- **Comfort and Convenience**
  - **Auto Memory Recall**: Changes the settings to the recall of memorised settings for power seat adjustment.
  - **Easy Exit Driver Seat**: Activates or deactivates easy exit function of the power seat.
  - **Chime Volume**: Changes the volume of warning chimes.
  - **Personalisation by Driver**: Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
  - **Rainsense Wipers**: Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with rain sensor.

- **Auto Rear Demist**: Automatically activates heated rear window.
Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear: Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **Lighting**
  - Vehicle Locator Lights: Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.
  - Exit Lighting: Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.
  - Left or Right Hand Traffic: Changes between lighting for left or right-hand traffic.
  - Adaptive Forward Lighting: Changes the settings of the functions of the LED headlights.

- **Power Door Locks**
  - Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout: Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.
  - Auto Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after switching on ignition.

Delayed Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function. This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until all doors are closed.

- **Remote Lock, Unlock, Start**
  - Remote Unlock Light Feedback: Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
  - Remote Lock Feedback: Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.
  - Remote Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.
  - Relock Remote Unlocked Doors: Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

Remote Window Operation: Activates or deactivates the operation of power windows with remote control.

Passive Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and an electronic key has been removed from the vehicle.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alert: Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the electronic key remains in the vehicle.
Instruments and controls

**OnStar**

OnStar is a personal connectivity and service assistant with integrated Wi-Fi hotspot. The OnStar service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

**Notice**
OnStar is not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

**Notice**
In order to be available and operational, OnStar needs a valid OnStar subscription, functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS satellite link.

To activate the OnStar services and set up an account, press ₀ and speak with an advisor.

Depending on the equipment of the vehicle, the following services are available:

- Emergency services and support in the case of a vehicle breakdown
- Wi-Fi hotspot

- Smartphone application
- Remote control, e.g. location of the vehicle, activation of horn and lights, control of central locking system
- Stolen vehicle assistance
- Vehicle diagnostics
- Destination download

**Notice**
The OnStar module of the vehicle is deactivated after ten days without an ignition cycle. Functions requiring a data connection will be available again after switching on the ignition.

**OnStar buttons**

- **Privacy button**
  Press and hold ₀ until a message is heard to activate or deactivate the transmission of the vehicle location. Press ₀ to answer a call or to end a call to an advisor. Press ₀ to access the Wi-Fi settings.

- **Service button**
  Press ₀ to establish a connection to an advisor.

- **SOS button**
  Press ₀ to establish a priority emergency connection to a specially trained emergency advisor.

- **Status LED**
  Green: The system is ready.
  Green flashing: The system is on a call.
  Red: A problem arose.
  Off: System is in standby mode.
  Red / green flashing for a short period of time: Transmission of the vehicle location has been deactivated.
OnStar services

General services
If you need any information concerning e.g. opening hours, points of interest and destinations or if you need any support e.g. in the case of a vehicle breakdown, a flat tyre and empty fuel tank, press ☎️ to establish a connection to an advisor.

Emergency services
In the case of an emergency situation, press ☎️ and talk to an advisor. The advisor then contacts emergency or assistance service providers and directs them to your vehicle.
In the case of an accident with activation of airbags or belt tensioners, an automatic emergency call is established. The advisor is immediately connected to your vehicle to see whether help is needed.

Wi-Fi hotspot
The Wi-Fi hotspot of the vehicle provides internet connectivity with a maximum speed of 4G/LTE.

Notice
The Wi-Fi hotspot functionality is not available for all markets.
Up to seven devices may be connected.
To connect a mobile device with the Wi-Fi hotspot:
1. Press ☎️ and then select Wi-Fi settings on the Info-Display. The settings displayed include the Wi-Fi hotspot name (SSID), password and connection type.
2. Start a Wi-Fi network search on your mobile device.
3. Select your vehicle hotspot (SSID) when listed.
4. When prompted, enter the password on your mobile device.

Notice
To change the SSID or password, press ☎️ and talk to an advisor or log in to your account.
To switch off the Wi-Fi hotspot functionality, press ☎️ to call an advisor.

Smartphone app
With the My Vauxhall smartphone app, some vehicle functions can be operated remotely.
The following functions are available:
- Lock or unlock vehicle.
- Honk horn or flash lights.
- Check fuel level, engine oil life and tyre pressure (only with tyre pressure monitoring system).
- Send navigation destination to the vehicle, if equipped with a built-in navigation system.
- Locate vehicle on a map.
- Manage Wi-Fi settings.
To operate these functions, download the app from Apple's App Store or Google Play Store.

Remote control
If desired, use any phone to call an advisor, who can remotely operate specific vehicle functions. Find the respective OnStar phone number on our country-specific website.
The following functions are available:

- Lock or unlock vehicle.
- Provide information on the vehicle location.
- Honk horn or flash lights.

**Stolen vehicle assistance**
If the vehicle is stolen, report the theft to the authorities and request OnStar stolen vehicle assistance. Use any phone to call an advisor. Find the respective OnStar phone number on our country-specific website.

OnStar can provide support in locating and recovering the vehicle.

**Theft alert**
When the anti-theft alarm system is triggered, a notification is sent to OnStar. You are then informed about this event by text message or email.

**Restart prevention**
By sending remote signals, OnStar can prevent the vehicle from restarting once it has been turned off.

**On-demand diagnostics**
At any time e.g. if the vehicle displays a vehicle message, press ☺ to contact an advisor and ask to complete a real-time diagnostic check to directly determine the issue. Depending on the results, the advisor will provide further support.

**Diagnostic report**
The vehicle automatically transmits diagnostic data to OnStar which sends a monthly email report to you and your preferred workshop.

**Notice**
The workshop notification function can be disabled in your account.

The report contains the status of key operating systems of the vehicle like engine, transmission, airbags, ABS, and other major systems. It also provides information on possible maintenance items and tyre pressure (only with tyre pressure monitoring system).

To look at the information in greater detail, select the link within the email and log in to your account.

**Destination download**
A desired destination can be directly downloaded to the navigation system. Press ☺ to call an advisor and describe the destination or point of interest.

The advisor can look up any address or point of interest and directly send the destination to the built-in navigation system.

**OnStar settings**

**OnStar PIN**
To have full access to all OnStar services, a four-digit PIN is required. The PIN has to be personalised when first talking to an advisor.

To change the PIN, press ☺ and talk to an advisor.

**Account data**
An OnStar subscriber has an account where all the data is stored. To request a change of the account information, press ☺ and talk to an advisor or log in to your account.
If the OnStar service is used on another vehicle, press ⏰ and request that the account be transferred to the new vehicle.

**Notice**
In any case, if the vehicle is disposed of, sold or otherwise transferred, immediately inform OnStar about the changes and terminate the OnStar service on this vehicle.

**Vehicle location**
The vehicle location is transmitted to OnStar when service is requested or triggered. A message on the Info-Display informs about this transmission.

To activate or deactivate the transmission of the vehicle location, press and hold ⏰ until an audio message is heard.

The deactivation is indicated by the status light flashing red and green for a short period of time and each time the vehicle is started.

**Notice**
If the transmission of the vehicle location is deactivated, some services are no longer available.

**Notice**
The vehicle location always remains accessible to OnStar in the case of an emergency.

Find the privacy policy in your account.

**Software updates**
OnStar may remotely carry out software updates without further notice or consent. These updates are to enhance or maintain safety and security or the operation of the vehicle.

These updates may concern privacy issues. Find the privacy policy in your account.
Lighting

Exterior lighting .................................. 132
  Light switch .................................. 132
  Automatic light control ..................... 133
  High beam ..................................... 133
  Headlight flash ................................ 133
  Headlight range adjustment ............. 133
  Headlights when driving
    abroad ...................................... 134
  Daytime running lights .................. 134
  LED headlights ................................ 134
  Hazard warning flashers ................. 137
  Turn and lane-change signals .......... 138
  Front fog lights ............................ 138
  Rear fog light ................................ 139
  Parking lights ............................... 139
  Reversing lights ............................ 139
  Misted light covers ....................... 139

Interior lighting ............................. 140
  Instrument panel illumination
    control ...................................... 140
  Interior lights .............................. 140
  Reading lights .............................. 140
  Sunvisor lights ............................ 141

Lighting features ............................ 141
  Centre console lighting ................... 141

Entry lighting ................................. 141
Exit lighting ................................... 141
Battery discharge protection ............ 142

Exterior lighting

Light switch

Turn light switch:
AUTO : automatic light control
  switches automatically
tween daytime running
light and headlight

:< sidelights
D : headlights

When switching on the ignition,
automatic light control is active.
Control indicator ➤ 112.
Tail lights
Tail lights are illuminated together with low/high beam and sidelights.

Automatic light control
When the automatic light control function is switched on and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the rain sensor system.
Daytime running light \(\diamond\) 134.

Automatic headlight activation
During poor lighting conditions headlights are switched on. Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.
LED headlights \(\diamond\) 134

Tunnel detection
When a tunnel is entered headlights are switched on without delay.

Headlight flash
To activate the headlight flash, pull lever.
Pulling lever deactivates high beam.
LED headlights \(\diamond\) 134.

Headlight range adjustment
Manual headlight range adjustment

Push lever to switch from low to high beam.
To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel to required position.

0 : front seats occupied
1 : all seats occupied
2 : all seats occupied and load compartment laden
3 : driver’s seat occupied and load compartment laden

Dynamic automatic headlight levelling

Headlights when driving abroad
The asymmetrical headlight beam extends visibility at the edge of the road at the passenger side. However, when driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, adjust the headlights to prevent dazzling of oncoming traffic.

Vehicles with halogen headlight system
The headlights do not have to be adjusted.

Vehicles with LED headlight
Headlights can be set for driving on the opposite side of the road in the vehicle personalisation menu via the Info-Display.
Select the relevant setting in Settings, Vehicle.
Info-Display 118.
Vehicle personalisation 122.
Every time the ignition is switched on, flashes for approx. four seconds as a reminder.
To deactivate, use the same procedure as described above. will not flash when function is deactivated.
Control indicator 112.

Daytime running lights
Daytime running lights increases visibility of the vehicle during daylight. They are switched on automatically during daytime when engine is running.

The system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically, depending on the lighting conditions. Automatic light control 133.

LED headlights
LED headlight system contains a variety of particular LEDs in each headlight which enables the control of different lighting programs.
Light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the lighting conditions, road type and driving situation. The vehicle adapts the headlights automatically to the situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.
Some functions of the LED headlights can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle personalisation menu. Select the relevant setting in Settings, Vehicle in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 122.
High beam assist can not be deactivated.
The following lighting functions are available with light switch in position AUTO or "D".

**Town light**
Activated automatically at a speed up to approx. 34 mph and in situations with exterior ambient light. The light is wide and symmetrical. A special beam pattern is designed to avoid glare for other road users.

**Country light**
Activated automatically at a speed above approx. 34 mph when driving in rural areas. The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is improved. Oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

**Curve light**
Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally triggered to improve lighting in curves. This function is activated at speeds from 25 mph to 43 mph and reacts to steering angle.

**Corner light**
When turning off, depending on the steering angle and the turn signal light, particular LEDs are triggered which illuminate the direction of travel. It is activated up to a speed of 25 mph.

**Reverse parking function**
To assist driver's orientation when parking, both corner lights and reversing light illuminate when headlights are on and reverse gear is engaged. They remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 4 mph in a forward gear.

**High beam assist**
This feature allows the high beam to function as main driving light at night. The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles. Each LED on right or left side can be triggered or faded out particularly according to the traffic situation. This gives the best light distribution without glaring other road users. Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding
Lighting

conditions. The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.

High beam assist includes a special motorway mode. When driving faster than 71 mph on motorways, the light beam becomes smaller to avoid glaring of oncoming traffic. When following vehicles ahead or passing, mirror glaring for these vehicles is reduced.

Activation

Indicator lever with or without MENU button

Activate high beam assist by pushing the indicator lever twice. High beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 31 mph. High beam is switched off at a speed below 22 mph, but high beam assist remains active.

Indicator lever with button

Activate high beam assist by pressing once. High beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 31 mph. High beam is switched off at a speed below 22 mph, but high beam assist remains active.

The green control indicator illuminates continuously when the high beam assist is activated, the blue one illuminates when high beam is on.

Control indicator , 112, . 112.
Pressing indicator lever once switches on manual high beam without high beam assist.
High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:
- Driving in urban areas.
- Reverse parking function is active.
- Front or rear fog lights are switched on.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

**Deactivation**

**Indicator lever with or without MENU button**
If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, pull indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist.
If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, push indicator lever twice to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.

**Indicator lever with \[\text{\textdegree}\] button**
If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, press \[\text{\textdegree}\] once or pull indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist.
If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, press \[\text{\textdegree}\] once to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.

**Headlight flash in conjunction with high beam assist**
Headlight flash by pulling indicator lever once will not deactivate high beam assist when high beam is off.
Headlight flash by pulling indicator lever once deactivates high beam assist when high beam is on.

**Dynamic automatic headlight levelling**
To prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled, headlight levelling is automatically adjusted based on inclination information measured by front and rear axle, acceleration or deceleration and vehicle speed.

**Headlights when driving abroad**

\[\text{\textdegree}\] 134.

**Fault in LED headlight system**
When the system detects a failure in the LED headlight system, it selects a preset position to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

**Hazard warning flashers**
Operated by pressing \[\text{\textdegree}\].
The illustrations show different versions.

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

---

**Turn and lane-change signals**

lever up : right turn signal
lever down : left turn signal

If the lever is moved past the resistance point, the turn signal is switched on constantly. When the steering wheel moves back, the turn signal is automatically deactivated.

For three flashes, e.g. when changing lanes, press the lever until resistance is felt and then release.

---

With a trailer connected, turn signal flashes six times and tone frequency changes when pressing the lever until resistance is felt and then releasing.

Move the lever to the resistance point and hold for longer indication.

Switch the turn signal off manually by moving the lever to its original position.

---

**Front fog lights**

Operated by pressing $D$.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.
Rear fog light

Operated by pressing Ø.
Light switch in position AUTO: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.
Light switch in position ≥≤: rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.
The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing a trailer or a plug is connected with the socket, e. g. when a bicycle carrier is used.

Parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:
1. Switch off ignition.
2. Move turn signal lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).
Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn signal control indicator.

Reversing lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.
Interior lighting

Instrument panel illumination control

Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted in position AUTO when the light sensor detects night conditions, or in position 8 or 9.

- instrument panel illumination
- Info-Display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

Turn thumb wheel ⌈ and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.

Interior lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.

Notice
In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front courtesy light

Operate rocker switch:
- : automatic switching on and off
- press : on
- press : off

Rear courtesy lights

Illuminate in conjunction with the front courtesy light depending on rocker switch position.

Reading lights

Operated by pressing ⬇ and ⬆ in the courtesy lights.
Lighting features

Centre console lighting
Spotlight incorporated in the interior lighting comes on when headlights are switched on.

Entry lighting

Welcome lighting
The following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:
- headlights
- tail lights
- number plate lights
- instrument panel light
- interior lights

Some functions are only operable when it is dark outside to facilitate locating the vehicle.
The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is switched on. Starting off ◊ 16.

Exit lighting
The following lights switch on if the key is removed from the ignition switch:
- interior lights
- instrument panel light
- puddle lights

Sunvisor lights
Illuminates when the cover is opened.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.
Select the relevant setting in Settings, ◊ Vehicle in the Info-Display.
Info-Display ◊ 118.
Vehicle personalisation ◊ 122.
The settings can be saved for the key being used ◊ 23.
The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver’s door is opened:
- illumination of some switches
- Driver Information Centre
- door pocket lights
They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark. Theatre lighting is activated if the driver's door is opened during this time.

**Path lighting**

Headlights, tail lights and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

**Activating**

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Remove the ignition key.
3. Open the driver's door.
4. Pull the turn signal lever.
5. Close the driver's door.

If the driver's door is not closed, the lights switch off after two minutes.

Exit lighting is switched off immediately if the turn signal lever is pulled while the driver's door is open.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in Settings, Vehicle in the Info-Display.

Info-Display 118.
Vehicle personalisation 122.

The settings can be saved for the key being used 23.

**Battery discharge protection**

**Vehicle battery state of charge function**

The function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via a generator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- auxiliary heater
- heated rear window and mirrors
- heated seats
- fan

In the second stage, a message which confirms the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

**Switching off electric lights**

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.
Climate control

Climate control systems .......... 143
Heating and ventilation system 143
Air conditioning system .......... 144
Electronic climate control system .................................... 146
Auxiliary heater ..................... 151
Air vents ..................................... 151
Adjustable air vents ................. 151
Fixed air vents ............................ 151
Maintenance .............................. 152
Air intake .................................. 152
Pollen filter ............................... 152
Air conditioning regular operation ................................ 152
Service .................................... 152

Climate control systems

Heating and ventilation system

Controls for:
- temperature
- air distribution 🔜, 🔜 and 🔜
- fan speed 🔜
- demisting and defrosting 🔜
Heated rear window 🔜 42.

Temperature
red : warm
blue : cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution

🔹 : to windscreen and front door windows
🔹 : to head area via adjustable air vents
🔹 : to foot well and windscreen

All combinations are possible.

Fan speed
Adjust the air flow by switching the fan to the desired speed.
Demisting and defrosting

- Press 🌡️: the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Switch on heated rear window 🧔.
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Air conditioning system

In addition to the controls of the heating and ventilation system, the air conditioning system has controls for:

- **A/C**: cooling
- 📃: air recirculation

Heated rear window 🧔 ⏯️ 42.
Heated seats 🧔 ⏯️ 53.
Ventilated seats 🧔 ⏯️ 53.
Heated steering wheel 🧔 ⏯️ 91.

Cooling A/C

Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling. The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.
If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.
Activated cooling may inhibit Autostops. Stop-start system \( \text{\textcopyright} \) 159.

**Air recirculation system \( \text{\textcopyright} \)**

Press \( \text{\textcopyright} \) to activate air recirculation mode. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.
Press \( \text{\textcopyright} \) again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

**Warning**

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate \( \text{\textcopyright} \).

**Maximum cooling**

Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.
- Switch on cooling A/C.
- Air circulation system \( \text{\textcopyright} \) on.
- Press air distribution switch \( \text{\textcopyright} \).
- Set temperature control to coldest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.
Climate control

Demisting and defrosting the windows

- Press $\text{V}$: the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window $\text{Ü}$.
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Notice
If $\text{V}$ is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until $\text{V}$ is pressed again.
If $\text{V}$ is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Autostop will be inhibited until $\text{V}$ is pressed again or until the fan is switched off.
If $\text{V}$ is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.
If $\text{V}$ is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.
Stop-start system $\text{◇}$ 159.

Electronic climate control system
The dual zone climate control allows different temperatures for driver side and front passenger side.
In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

Controls for:
- temperature on driver side
- air distribution $\text{M}$ $\text{L}$ $\text{K}$
- fan speed $\text{Z}$
- temperature on front passenger side
- system on or off ON/OFF
- cooling A/C
- automatic mode AUTO
- manual air recirculation $\text{H}$
- demisting and defrosting $\text{V}$
- dual zone temperature synchronisation SYNC
Heated rear window $\text{Ü}$ $\text{◇}$ 42.
Climate control

Heated seats 🛋 53.
Ventilated seats 🛋 53.
Heated steering wheel 🛋 91.

Each change of settings is shown in the Info-Display for a few seconds. The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Automatic mode AUTO

Basic setting for maximum comfort:
- Press AUTO, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.

- Press A/C to switch on optimal cooling and demisting. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button.
- Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary knob. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.

The fan speed regulation in automatic mode can be changed in the Settings menu.

Vehicle personalisation 122.

Temperature preselection
Climate control

Set temperatures to the desired value. The knob on the passenger side changes the temperature for the passenger side. The knob on the driver’s side changes the temperature for the driver’s side or for both sides depending on activation of synchronisation SYNC.

The selected temperature is indicated in the display of the knob.

If the minimum temperature Lo is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling, if cooling A/C is switched on.

If the maximum temperature Hi is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

**Notice**
If A/C is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.

Stop-start system 159.

Dual zone temperature synchronisation SYNC

Press SYNC to link passenger side temperature setting to the driver side. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

When passenger side settings will be adjusted, synchronisation is deactivated and the LED extinguishes.

Demisting and defrosting the windows

- Press  . Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- To return to heated rear window: press .
- To return to previous mode: press , to return to automatic mode: press AUTO.

Settings of automatic rear window heating can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 122.

**Notice**
If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again or until the fan is switched off.
If ⏀ is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

If ⏿ is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system ◊ 159.

**System on or off ON/OFF**

Cooling, fan and automatic mode can be switched off by pressing ON/OFF. When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button ON/OFF is off.

Activation by pressing ON/OFF, A/C or AUTO. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

**Manual settings**

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and rotary knobs as described below. Changing a setting will deactivate the automatic mode.

---

**Fan speed ⚡**

Press left button to decrease or right button to increase fan speed. The fan speed is indicated by the number of LEDs in the button.

Pressing the left button for longer: fan and cooling are switched off.

Pressing the right button for longer: the fan runs at maximum speed.

To return to automatic mode: Press AUTO.

---

**Air distribution ⏿, ⏿, ⏶**

Press the appropriate button for the desired adjustment. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button.

 Sesso: to windscreen and front door windows (air conditioning is activated in the background to help preventing windows from fogging)

 Sesso: to head area via adjustable air vents

 Sesso: to foot well and windscreen

All combinations are possible.

Return to automatic air distribution: press AUTO.
Cooling A/C

Press A/C to switch on cooling. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press A/C again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

When the cooling system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Autostop. Exception: defrost system is activated and outside temperature above 0 °C requests a restart.

Stop-start system 159.

The display will indicate A/C ON when cooling is activated or A/C OFF when the cooling is deactivated.

Manual air recirculation

Press to activate the air recirculation mode. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button.

Press to deactivate recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside, when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Automatic air recirculation

An air humidity sensor switches automatically to external air if internal air humidity is too high.
Basic settings

Some settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ➔ 122.

Auxiliary heater

Air heater

Quickheat is an electric auxiliary air heater which automatically warms up the passenger compartment more quickly.

Air vents

Adjustable air vents

At least one air vent must be open while cooling is on.

To open the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the bigger symbol. Adjust the air amount at the vent outlet by turning the adjuster wheel.

Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the smaller symbol.

⚠️ Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Fixed air vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the foot wells.
Maintenance

Air intake

The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Pollen filter

The pollen filter cleans dust, soot, pollen and spores from the air entering the vehicle through the air intake.

Air conditioning regular operation

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check
Driving and operating

Driving hints ........................................... 154
Control of the vehicle ................................ 154
Steering .................................................. 154

Starting and operating ................................. 154
New vehicle running-in ................................ 154
Ignition switch positions .............................. 154
Power button .......................................... 155
Retained power off ..................................... 156
Starting the engine ..................................... 157
Overrun cut-off ......................................... 159
Stop-start system ....................................... 159
Parking .................................................... 162

Engine exhaust ........................................ 164
Diesel particle filter .................................. 164
Catalytic converter .................................... 165

Automatic transmission ............................... 165
Transmission display ................................ 165
Selector lever .......................................... 166
Manual mode ........................................... 167
Electronic driving programmes ..................... 167
Fault ....................................................... 168
Interruption of power supply ......................... 168

Manual transmission .................................. 169
Manual transmission automated ...................... 169
Transmission display ................................ 170
Selector lever .......................................... 170
Manual mode ........................................... 171
Electronic driving programmes ..................... 171
Fault ....................................................... 172

Brakes .................................................... 172
Antilock brake system ................................ 172
Parking brake .......................................... 173
Brake assist ............................................ 175
Hill start assist ......................................... 175

Ride control systems .................................. 175
Traction Control system .............................. 175
Electronic Stability Control ........................ 176
Sport mode ............................................. 177

Driver assistance systems ........................... 178
Cruise control .......................................... 178
Speed limiter .......................................... 180
Forward collision alert .............................. 181
Following distance indication ....................... 184
Active emergency braking .......................... 184
Parking assist .......................................... 186
Side blind spot alert .................................. 194
Rear view camera ..................................... 195
Traffic sign assistant ................................ 197
Lane keep assist ...................................... 201

Fuel ....................................................... 203
Fuel for petrol engines .............................. 203
Fuel for diesel engines ............................... 203
Refuelling ............................................... 203
Fuel consumption - CO₂-Emissions .................. 204

Trailer hitch ............................................. 205
General information .................................. 205
Driving characteristics and towing tips ............ 206
Trailer towing .......................................... 206
Towing equipment ..................................... 207
Trailer stability assist ................................. 210
Driving hints

Control of the vehicle

Never coast with engine not running

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

All systems function during an Autostop.

Stop-start system \(\diamond\) 159.

Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Use only floor mats, which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side.

Steering

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

Starting and operating

New vehicle running-in

Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher.

Additionally, the cleaning process of the diesel particle filter may take place more often.

Diesel particle filter \(\diamond\) 164.

Autostop may be inhibited to allow for charging of the vehicle battery.

Ignition switch positions

Turn key:
Driving and operating

Steering wheel lock
Remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.

⚠️ Danger
Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

Power button
Electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

Accessory power mode
Press Engine Start/Stop once without operating clutch or brake pedal. The yellow LED in the button illuminates. Steering wheel lock is released and some electrical functions are operable, ignition is off.

Ignition on power mode
Press and hold Engine Start/Stop for six seconds without operating clutch or brake pedal. The green LED in the button illuminates, diesel engine is preheating. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine start
Operate clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission or manual transmission automated) and press Engine Start/Stop once more. Release button after starting procedure begins.

Ignition off
Press Engine Start/Stop briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some

0 : ignition off: Some functions remain active until key is removed or driver’s door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously
1 : accessory power mode: Steering wheel lock released, some electrical functions are operable, ignition is off
2 : ignition on power mode: Ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable
3 : engine start: Release key after starting procedure begins
functions remain active until driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously.

Emergency shut off during driving
Press Engine Start/Stop for longer than two seconds or press twice briefly within five seconds ◇ 157.

Steering wheel lock
The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been switched off.
- The driver's door is opened.
To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch on accessory mode or start the engine directly.

⚠ Warning
If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed, tow-started or jump-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

Operation on vehicles with electronic key system in case of failure
If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, the Driver Information Centre may display No Remote Detected or Replace Battery in Remote Key when you try to start the vehicle.
Place the electronic key solely centred in the transmitter area in longitudinal direction flat with buttons upside as shown in the illustration.
Other objects, e.g. other keys, transponder, tags, coins etc. must be removed from the centre console.

Depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or the brake pedal (automatic transmission or manual transmission automated) and press Engine Start/Stop.
To switch off the engine, press Engine Start/Stop again. Remove the electronic key from the centre console.
This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible ◇ 21.
For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system ◇ 23.

Retained power off
The following electronic systems can work until the driver's door is opened or for ten minutes after the ignition is switched off:
- power windows
- sunroof
- power outlets
Starting the engine

Vehicles with ignition switch

Turn key to position 1 to release the steering wheel lock.

Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to P or N.

Manual transmission automated: operate brake pedal. If brake pedal is not depressed, N in the transmission display could flash or a message in the Driver Information Centre could appear.

Do not operate accelerator pedal.

Diesel engines: turn the key to position 2 for preheating and wait until control indicator \( \text{W} \) extinguishes.

Turn key briefly to position 3 and release: an automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running, see Automatic Starter Control.

Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal \( \Rightarrow 159 \).

Automatic transmission or manual transmission automated: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal \( \Rightarrow 159 \).

Vehicles with power button

Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to P or N.

Manual transmission automated: operate brake pedal. If brake pedal is not depressed, N in the transmission display could flash or a message in the Driver Information Centre could appear.

Do not operate accelerator pedal.
Press and release **Engine Start/Stop**: an automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running, see automatic starter control.

Before restarting or to switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, press **Engine Start/Stop** once more briefly.

Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.

Automatic transmission or manual transmission automated: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal.

**Emergency shut off during driving**

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press **Engine Start/Stop** for longer than two seconds or press twice briefly within five seconds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>△ Danger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Starting the vehicle at low temperatures**

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery. With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. five minutes. The selector lever must be in position P.

**Automatic starter control**

This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not need to hold the key in position 3 or to hold **Engine Start/Stop** pressed. Once applied, the system will go on starting automatically until the engine is running. Because of the checking procedure, the engine starts running after a short delay.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine:

- Clutch pedal not operated (manual transmission).
- Brake pedal not operated or selector lever not in P or N (automatic transmission).
- Brake pedal not operated (manual transmission automated).
- Timeout occurred.
**Turbo engine warm-up**

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

**Overrun cut-off**

The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator is released.

**Stop-start system**

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam.

**Activation**

The stop-start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.

**Deactivation**

Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing OFF. The deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

**Autostop**

**Vehicles with manual transmission**

Depending on the engine, two versions of an Autostop are available. See engine data to identify the engine identifier code for your vehicle 268.

**Conventional Autostop**

All petrol engines and diesel engines except B16DTU have only the conventional Autostop.

An Autostop can be activated at a standstill or at a low speed up to 3 mph.

Activate a conventional Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the lever in neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

**Early Autostop**

Engine B16DTU has early Autostop in addition to conventional Autostop.
An Autostop, both conventional and early, can be activated at a standstill or at a low speed up to 9 mph.

Activate an early Autostop as follows:
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

**Vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated**

If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

The stop-start system will be disabled on inclines of 15% or more.

### Indication

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the **AUTOSTOP** position in the tachometer.

After restart, the idle speed is indicated.

During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

### Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.
- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is fully closed.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is above -5 °C.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the diesel particle filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. See Climate control chapter for more details 144.
Immediately after motorway driving an Autostop may be inhibited.

New vehicle running-in 154.

Vehicle battery discharge protection
To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

Power saving measures
During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver

Vehicles with manual transmission
Depending on the engine, two versions of a restart are available. See engine data to identify the engine identifier code for your vehicle 268.

A restart for all engines except B16DTU is possible at a standstill or at a low speed up to 4 mph and up to 9 mph for engine B16DTU.

Conventional restart
All engines have conventional restart. Depress the clutch pedal without pressing the brake pedal to restart the engine.

On engines with late restart only possible without depressed brake pedal.

Late restart
All petrol engines and the diesel engines B16DTU and B16DTR have late restart in addition to conventional restart.

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Select first gear.
- Release the brake pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated:
Release the brake pedal or move selector lever out of D into N or P to restart the engine.

Restart of the engine by the stop-start system
On vehicles with manual transmission which are in a conventional Autostop, the selector lever must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

On vehicles with manual transmission which are in an early Autostop, an automatic restart is possible in every selector lever position.

On vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated, the selector lever must be in D to enable an automatic restart.

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system:

- The stop-start system is manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The driver’s seat belt is unfastened and the driver’s door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
Driving and operating

- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

Parking

**Warning**

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.

- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.

For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch for a minimum of one second until control indicator illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied.

- Switch off the engine.

- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position P before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

- If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position P before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Close the windows and the sunroof.

- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position P.

For vehicles with manual transmission automated, the key can only be removed from the ignition switch when the parking brake is applied.
Lock the vehicle.

Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off 213.

### Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

### Notice

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the engine is switched off automatically if the vehicle comes to a standstill within a certain time.

### Emergency operation under extreme cold temperatures

**Warning**

This emergency operation may only be carried out in case of extremely cold temperatures and if the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

In countries with extreme cold temperatures it may be necessary to park the vehicle without applied parking brake.

This is an emergency operation to avoid freezing of the parking brake.

**Vehicles equipped with manual transmission automated, electric parking brake and power button**

On vehicles with manual transmission automated the ignition can only be switched off if the parking brake is applied. Therefore the following items must be carried out to release the electric parking brake:

1. Apply electric parking brake and switch off ignition.
2. Switch on ignition by pressing and holding Engine Start/Stop for six seconds without operating brake pedal.
3. Press brake pedal and release electric parking brake.
4. Switch off ignition.
Engine exhaust

Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Diesel particle filter

Automatic cleaning process

The diesel particle filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving without any notification. The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Typically it needs between seven and twelve minutes. Autostop is not available and fuel consumption may be higher during this period. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

System requires manual cleaning process

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.

If cleaning of the filter is required and if previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, it will be indicated by ⚠️ and a warning message in the Driver Information Centre.

⚠️ with a warning message illuminates when diesel particle filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible.

⚠️ with a warning message flashes when diesel particle filter has reached the maximum filling level. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

Activate manual cleaning process

To activate cleaning process, continue driving, keep engine speed above 2000 revolutions per minute. Shift down if necessary. Diesel particle filter cleaning is then started.

Cleaning takes place quickest at high engine speeds and loads.

The control indicator ⚠️ extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete. Keep on driving until self-cleaning operation is complete.
Caution
If the cleaning process is interrupted, there is a risk of provoking severe engine damage.

Cleaning process not possible
If cleaning is not possible for any reasons, \( \mathcal{Z} \) illuminates and a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre. Engine power may be reduced. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Catalytic converter
The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

Caution
Fuel grades other than those listed on pages \( \Phi \ 203, \Phi \ 268 \) could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Automatic transmission
The automatic transmission permits automatic gearshifting (automatic mode) or manual gearshifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the selector lever to + or - \( \Phi \ 167 \).

Transmission display
The mode or selected gear is shown in the transmission display.
In automatic mode, the driving programme is indicated by D in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, M and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

R indicates reverse gear.

N indicates neutral position.

P indicates park position.

Selector lever

P : park position, wheels are locked, engage only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied

R : reverse gear, engage only when the vehicle is stationary

N : neutral

D : automatic mode

M : manual mode

+ : upshift in manual mode

- : downshift in manual mode

Without brake pedal applied, control indicator  illuminates.

If the selector lever is not in P when the ignition is switched off, control indicator  flashes.

To engage P or R, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with the lever in position P or N. When position N is selected, press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake before starting.

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Engine braking

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill, see manual mode.

The selector lever is locked in P and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the selector lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.
Rocking the vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between D and R in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking

Apply the parking brake and engage P.
The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position P.

Manual mode

Move selector lever out of position D towards the left in position M.
Tap selector lever upwards + to shift to a higher gear.
Tap the selector lever downwards - to shift to a lower gear.
If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Gear shift indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.
Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Electronic driving programmes

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.
- Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

If the accelerator pedal is pressed down completely in automatic mode, the transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.
Fault
In the event of a fault a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages 120.
Electronic transmission control enables only fourth gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Interruption of power supply
In the event of an interruption of power supply, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the P position. The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition switch.
If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads 253.
If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever.
1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Release the selector lever trim from the centre console. Poke with a finger into the leather socket below the selector lever and push the trim upwards. Rotate trim to the left.
3. Insert a small stick (e.g. a pen or screw driver) into the opening near the selector lever. Push down the the stick vertically and move the selector lever out of P. If this position is engaged again, the selector lever will be locked again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption remedied by a workshop.
4. Mount the selector lever trim onto the centre console and refit.
Driving and operating

Manual transmission

To engage reverse, depress the clutch pedal and then press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

Caution

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Gear shift indication \(\Rightarrow\) 110.
Stop-start system \(\Rightarrow\) 159.

Manual transmission automated

The automated manual transmission permits manual gearshifting (manual mode) or automatic gearshifting (automatic mode), both with automatic clutch control.

Manual shifting is possible by tapping the selector lever in manual mode.

Notice

When unlocking or opening a vehicle door, a sound may be audible caused by the hydraulic system.
Transmission display

In automatic mode, the driving programme is indicated by D in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, M and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

R indicates reverse gear.

N indicates neutral.

Selector lever

Always move the selector lever in the appropriate direction as far as it will go. Upon release, it automatically returns to the centre position.

N : neutral position
D/M : switch between automatic (D) and manual (M) shift mode.

The transmission display shows either D or M with the selected gear

+ : upshifting in manual mode
− : downshifting in manual mode
R : reverse gear. Engage only when vehicle is stationary

If selector lever is moved from R to the left, D is directly engaged.

If selector lever is moved from D to + or −, manual mode M is selected and the transmission shifts.

Starting off

Depress the brake pedal and move the selector lever to D/M or R. If D is selected, transmission is in automatic mode and first gear is engaged. If R is selected, reverse gear is engaged.

The vehicle starts to move when the brake pedal is released.

To start-off without depressing the brake pedal, accelerate immediately after engaging a gear as long as D or R flashes.

If neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal are depressed, no gear is engaged and D or R flashes for a brief time in the display.

Stopping the vehicle

In D, first gear is engaged and the clutch is released when the vehicle is stopped. In R, reverse gear remains engaged.
Driving and operating

Engine braking

Automatic mode
When driving downhill, the manual transmission automated does not shift into higher gears until a fairly high engine speed has been reached. It shifts down in good time when braking.

Manual mode
To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill. Changing into manual mode is only possible while the engine is running or during an Autostop.

Rocking the vehicle
Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between R and D in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking
The most recently engaged gear (see transmission display) remains engaged when switching off ignition. With N, no gear is engaged. Therefore always apply the parking brake when switching off ignition. If parking brake is not applied, P flashes in the transmission display and the key cannot be removed from the ignition switch. P stops flashing in the transmission display as soon as the parking brake is slightly applied. When the ignition is switched off, the transmission no longer responds to movement of the selector lever.

Manual mode
If a higher gear is selected when the engine speed is too low, or a lower gear when the speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This prevents the engine from running at too low or too high an engine speed. A warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages ✔ 120.

If engine speed is too low, the transmission automatically shifts to a lower gear.
When + or - is selected in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode and shifts accordingly.

Gear shift indication
The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.
Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Electronic driving programmes
- Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.
- The adaptive programme tailors gearshifting to the driving conditions, e.g. greater load or gradients.
Kickdown
If the accelerator pedal is pressed down completely in automatic mode, the transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault
To prevent damage to the manual transmission automated, the clutch is engaged automatically at high clutch temperatures.
In the event of a fault, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages 120.
Continued driving is restricted or not possible, depending on the fault.
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Brakes
The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.
If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing the journey.
When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.
Control indicator 109.

Antilock brake system
Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.
ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.
For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.
After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.

Adaptive brake light
During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.
Fault

⚠️ Warning

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Parking brake

⚠️ Warning

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator ⚠️ must illuminate constantly.

Manual parking brake

⚠️ Warning

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Electric parking brake

Applying when vehicle is stationary

⚠️ Warning

Pull switch ⚠️ for a minimum of one second until control indicator ⚠️ illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied.
The electric parking brake operates automatically with adequate force.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the electric parking brake status. Control indicator 🟢 109.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.

Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Releasing
Switch on ignition. Keep foot brake pedal depressed and then push switch 🟢.

Drive away function
Vehicles with manual transmission: Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is not possible when switch 🟢 is pulled at the same time.

Vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated: Engaging D and then depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is not possible when switch 🟢 is pulled at the same time.

Dynamic braking when vehicle is moving
When the vehicle is moving and the switch 🟢 is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch 🟢 is released, dynamic braking will be stopped.

Automatic applying
If the vehicle is equipped with automatic transmission and adaptive cruise control is active, electric parking brake is applied automatically when vehicle is stopped by the system for more than two minutes.

Parking brake releases automatically after moving off.

Functionality check
When the vehicle is not moving, the electric parking brake might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.

Fault
Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator 🟢 and by a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages 🟢 120.

Apply electric parking brake: pull and hold the switch 🟢 for more than five seconds. If control indicator 🟢 illuminates, electric parking brake is applied.

Release electric parking brake: push and hold the switch 🟢 for more than two seconds. If control indicator 🟢 extinguishes, electric parking brake is released.

Control indicator 🟢 flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.
Brake assist
If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.
Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.
Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Hill start assist
The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.
When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, brakes remain on for further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

Ride control systems

Traction Control system
The Traction Control system (TC) is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC).
TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.
As soon as the drive wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator \[\Box\] extinguishes.
When TC operates \[\Box\] flashes.

 tc 110.

Deactivation
TC can be switched off when spinning of drive wheels is required: press \[\Box\] briefly.

⚠️ Warning
Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.
Control indicator $\text{TC}$ illuminates.
A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.
When TC is deactivated, ESC remains active but with higher control threshold.
TC is reactivated by pressing $\text{TC}$ again. A status message pops up in the Driver Information Centre when TC is reactivated.
TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Fault**
If there is a fault in the system the control indicator $\text{TC}$ illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

**Electronic Stability Control**
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.
As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer/oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.
ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC). It prevents the drive wheels from spinning.
Torque distribution is a special feature that allocates the torque to the drive wheels before the ESC intervenes. When cornering, the wheels on the inner curve are braked individually. Additionally, engine torque will be delivered to the drive wheel on the outer curve. This reduces the tendency of understeering and improves traction when cornering fast.

ESC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator $\text{TC}$ extinguishes.
When ESC operates $\text{TC}$ flashes.

**Warning**
Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator $\text{TC}$ $\diamond$ 110.
**Deactivation**

ESC and TC can be deactivated:
- Hold  pressed for a minimum of five seconds: ESC and TC are both deactivated. and illuminate and status messages appear in the Driver Information Centre.

To deactivate only Traction control system press button briefly: TC is inactive but ESC remains active,  illuminates. A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the button again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated. and extinguishes when TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Fault**

If there is a fault in the system the control indicator  illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

**Sport mode**

Sport mode adapts the settings of some vehicle systems to a sportier driving style.
- The engine reacts more quickly to the accelerator pedal.
- Steering reacts more direct to provide better contact with the road surface.
- Shift points of automatic transmission occur later.

**Activation**

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.
Driving and operating

Press SPORT when engine is running.
LED in the button lights up when sport mode is active and a status message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Deactivation
Briefly press SPORT. Sport mode is deactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Driver assistance systems

⚠️ Warning
Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention.
The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle.
When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

Cruise control
The cruise control can store and maintain speeds of approx. 20 mph to maximum vehicle speed. Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.
For safety reasons, the cruise control cannot be activated until the foot brake has been operated once. Activating in first gear is not possible.

Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Illustrations show different versions.
Driving and operating

On vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated cruise control can be activated in automatic mode and manual mode.

Control indicator  112.

Switching on

Press ; control indicator in instrument cluster illuminates white.

Activation

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to SET/-, the current speed is stored and maintained. Control indicator in instrument cluster illuminates green. Set speed is indicated on the display. Accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while gearshifting.

Increase speed

With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to RES/+ or briefly turn to RES/+ repeatedly: speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to SET/-.

Reduce speed

With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to SET/- or briefly turn to SET/- repeatedly: speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Deactivation

Press ; control indicator in instrument cluster illuminates white. Cruise control is deactivated. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.
Automatic deactivation:
- Vehicle speed is below approx. 20 mph.
- Vehicle speed drops more than 15 mph below the set speed.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds.
- The selector lever is in N.
- Engine speed is in a very low range.
- The Traction Control system or Electronic Stability Control is operating.
- Parking brake is applied.
- Simultaneous pressing RES/+ and brake pedal deactivates cruise control and will delete stored speed.

Resume stored speed
Turn thumb wheel to RES/+ at a speed above 20 mph. The stored speed will be obtained.

Switching off
Press ⅍, control indicator ⅝ in instrument cluster extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.
Pressing ⫬ to activate the speed limiter or switching off the ignition also switches off cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

Speed limiter
The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.
The maximum speed can be set at speeds above 15 mph up to 125 mph.
The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.
The preset speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when the system is active.
Press 📻. If cruise control has been activated before, it is switched off when speed limiter is activated and control indicator 🚗 extinguishes.

Set speed limit
Accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn thumb wheel to SET/-: the current speed is stored as maximum speed. Speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Exceeding the speed limit
When exceeding the limited speed without driver input, the speed will flash in the Driver Information Centre and a chime sounds during this period.
In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly nearly to the final point. In this case no chime appears.
Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

Deactivation
Press 📻: speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit.
The limited speed will be stored and is indicated in brackets in the Driver Information Centre. Additionally, a corresponding message appears.

Resume limit speed
Turn thumb wheel to RES/+.
The stored speed limit will be obtained.

Switching off
Press 📻, the speed limit indication extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre. The stored speed is deleted.
By pressing 📻 to activate cruise control, speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.
By switching off the ignition, speed limiter is also deactivated, but the speed limit will be stored for next speed limiter activation.

Forward collision alert
The forward collision alert can help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes.
Forward collision alert uses the front camera system in the windscreen to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path, within a distance of approx. 60 metres.

Change speed limit
With speed limiter active, hold or briefly turn thumb wheel to RES/+ to increase or SET/- to decrease the desired maximum speed.
A vehicle ahead is indicated by control indicator 🚗.

If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre is provided.

Additionally the driver gets notified by a flashing red LED stripe which is projected on the windscreen in the driver's field of view.

A precondition is that forward collision alert is not deactivated by pressing ❌.

**Activation**

Forward collision alert operates automatically above 5 mph, if it is not deactivated by pressing ❌, see below.

---

**Selecting the alert sensitivity**

The alert sensitivity can be set to near, medium or far.

Press 🚗, the current setting is shown on the Driver Information Centre. Press 🚗 repeatedly to change the alert sensitivity. The selected setting is also displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

---

**Alerting the driver**

The vehicle ahead control indicator 🚗 illuminates green in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path.

The control indicator 🚗 changes to yellow when the distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.
Driving and operating

Caution

The colour lighting of this control indicator does not correspond to local traffic laws on following distance. The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions etc. at all times.

When the time to a potential collision with a vehicle in front gets too small and a collision is imminent, the collision alert symbol pops-up in the Driver Information Centre and the driver gets notified by a flashing red LED stripe which is projected on the windscreen in the driver's field of view.

Simultaneously a warning chime sounds. Depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle, if it is required by the situation.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated. Press \( \text{V} \) repeatedly until Forward Collision Alert Off appears in the Driver Information Centre.

If the forward collision alert was deactivated, alert sensitivity is set to "medium" when ignition is switched on next time.

The settings "near", "medium" or "far" will be stored when the ignition is switched off.

General information

⚠️ Warning

Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, it may not provide you enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

System limitations

The system is designed to warn on vehicles only, but may react also to other objects.
In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance is limited:

- on winding roads
- when weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- when the sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers

**Following distance indication**

The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle. The front camera in the windscreen is used to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in the vehicle's path. It is active at speeds above 25 mph. When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds, displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre.

On Midlevel display, choose Info Menu via MENU on the turn signal lever and turn the adjuster wheel to choose following distance indication page, 113

On Uplevel display, select Info menu via steering wheel buttons and press \(\checkmark\) to select following distance indication, 113.

The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 seconds.
If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -.- sec.

**Active emergency braking**

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles and obstacles directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert, 181.

The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

Active emergency braking operates above walking speed up to 53 mph. A precondition is that the system is not deactivated by toggling the gap switch to Off setting, 181.

The system includes:

- brake preparation system
- emergency automatic braking
- forward looking brake assist
Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only. The driver must continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates.

Brake preparation system

When approaching a vehicle ahead so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurises the brakes. This reduces the response time, when a manual or automatic braking is requested.

The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur more rapidly.

The system operates up to a speed of 50 mph.

Emergency automatic braking

After the brake preparation and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash.

The system operates up to a speed of 37 mph.

Below a speed of 25 mph the system can apply full braking.

Forward looking brake assist

In addition to the brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function makes the brake assist more sensitive. Therefore, depressing the brake pedal less strongly results in immediate hard braking. This function helps the driver brake quicker and harder before the imminent collision.

The system operates up to a speed of 53 mph.

Warning

Active emergency braking is not designed to apply hard autonomous braking or to automatically avoid a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision. It may not react for pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver shall always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions. The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

System limitations

The active emergency braking has limited or no function during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the camera sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.
In some cases, the active emergency braking system may provide an automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, for instance in parking garages, due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is normal operation, the vehicle does not need service. Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking.

Deactivation

Active emergency braking can be deactivated by repeatedly pressing the gap switch \( \Rightarrow \) to Off setting,

\( \Diamond 181. \) If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

**Fault**

In the event of a system service requirement, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If the system does not work as it should do, vehicle messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages \( \Diamond 120. \)

**Parking assist**

**Rear parking assist**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It is the driver who bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre. Always check the surrounding area while reversing and using the rear parking assist system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

**Activation**

After ignition is switched on, the rear parking assist is activated.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button \( \mathbf{P} \) \( \Rightarrow \) indicates that the system is ready to operate.
Indication
The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, respectively up to 1.5 metres while reverse gear is engaged.
Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.
Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre 113.
The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message distance indication appears again.

Deactivation
Press parking assist button P\uparrow to deactivate, the LED in the button extinguishes.

Fault
In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, the LED in the button flashes for three seconds and then extinguishes. A message is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Front-rear parking assist

⚠️ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre. Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.
The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indication. It uses two different acoustic warning signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.
Driving and operating

The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors each in the rear and front bumper.

Activation
The system is activated automatically at a speed up to 7 mph.

Indication
The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles in front of the vehicle in a distance range up to 80 cm and against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, respectively up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre or, depending on the version, on the Info-Display.
Driving and operating

The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message distance indication appears again.

Deactivation
The system is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 7 mph.

Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P on the steering wheel.

When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and Park Assist Off pops-up in the Driver Information Centre.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if P is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

The complete system can be manually deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info-Display. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until activation in personalisation menu again. Vehicle personalisation 122.

The advanced parking assist measures a suitable parking slot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle into a parallel or perpendicular parking slot.

Instructions are given in the Driver Information Centre 113 or, depending on the version, on the Info-Display 118, supported by acoustic signals.

The driver must control acceleration, braking and gear shifting, while steering is done automatically.

Fault
In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message pops-up in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages 120.

Advanced parking assist

⚠️ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking slot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.
Advanced parking assist is always combined with front-rear parking assist. Both systems use the same sensors in the front and rear bumper. The system has six ultrasonic parking sensors each in both the rear and front bumper.

**Activation of advanced parking assist**
Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.

When searching for a parking slot, the system is ready to operate with a short press of P.

The system recognises and memorises ten metres for parallel parking slots or six metres for perpendicular parking slots in the parking assist mode. The system can only be activated at a speed up to 18 mph and the system searches for a parking slot at a speed up to 18 mph.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is 1.8 metres for parallel parking and 2.5 metres for perpendicular parking.

**Functionality**
- **Parking slot searching mode, indication in the Driver Information Centre**

Select parallel or perpendicular parking slot in Driver Information Centre by long press on P.

The system is configured to detect parking slots by default on the passenger side. To detect parking slots on the driver side, switch on turn signal indicator on the driver side.
When a slot is detected, a visual feedback in the Driver Information Centre and an acoustic signal is given.

Select parallel or perpendicular parking slot by tapping the respective icon on the display.
Select parking side by tapping the respective icon on the display.

When a slot is detected, a visual feedback on the Colour-Info-Display and an acoustic signal is given.
If the driver does not stop the vehicle after a parking slot is proposed, the system starts to search for another suitable parking slot.

**Park guiding mode**
The parking slot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within ten metres for parallel parking slots or six metres for perpendicular parking slots after the Stop message is given. The system calculates the optimal path into the parking slot.
Driving and operating

A brief vibration in the steering wheel after engaging reverse gear indicates that the steering is controlled by the system. Then the vehicle is steered into the slot automatically by giving the driver detailed instructions for braking, accelerating and gear shifting. The driver must keep hands away from the steering wheel.

Always pay attention to the sound of the front-rear parking assist. Continuous sound indicates that the distance to an obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm.

If, for any reason, the driver must take over control of the steering, hold the steering wheel only at the outer edge. Automatic steering is cancelled in this event.

**Display indication**

The instructions on the display show:

- General hints and warning messages.
- A hint when driving faster than 18 mph during parking slot searching mode.
- The demand to stop the vehicle, when a parking slot is detected.
- The direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre.
- The demand to shift into reverse or first gear.
- The demand to accelerate or brake.
- For some of the instructions a progress bar is shown in the Driver Information Centre.
- The successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a pop-up symbol and a chime.
- The cancelling of a parking manoeuvre.

**Display priorities**

Advanced parking assist indication in the Driver Information Centre can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After approving the message by pressing SET/CLR on the turn signal lever or ✔ on the steering wheel, advanced parking assist instructions appear again and the parking manoeuvre can be continued.

**Deactivation**

The system is deactivated by:

- a short press of P
d
- parking manoeuvre successfully ended
- driving faster than 18 mph during parking slot search
- driving faster than 5 mph during parking guidance
- driver interference on steering wheel detected
- exceeding number of maximum gear changes: eight cycles when parallel parking or five cycles when perpendicular parking
- switching off the ignition

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by Parking Deactivated on the display. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.
Fault
A message appears when:
● There is a fault in the system.
● The driver did not successfully complete the parking manoeuvre.
● The system is not operational.
● Any of the deactivation reasons described above apply.

If an object is detected during parking instructions, Stop is indicated on the display. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. A long press of will activate the system and search for a new parking slot.

Basic notes on parking assist systems

⚠️ Warning
Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.
Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

Caution
Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.
Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.
Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.
Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

Notice
It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place.

Advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre. The system may recognize an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a crossing as a parking slot. After selecting reverse gear the system...
Driving and operating

will start a parking manoeuvre. Take care regarding the availability of the suggested parking slot.

Surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Notice
After production, the system requires a calibration. For optimal parking guidance, a driving distance of at least 6 miles, including a number of bends, is required.

Side blind spot alert
The Side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified "blind spot" zone. The system alerts visually in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

Side blind spot alert uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors which are located in the front and rear bumper on both sides of the vehicle.

⚠️ Warning

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.
The system does not detect:
- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, a yellow warning symbol \( \text{\textcopyright} \) will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates the turn signal, the warning symbol \( \text{\textcopyright} \) starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.

Notice
If the overtaking vehicle is at least 6 mph faster than the vehicle being overtaken, the warning symbol \( \text{\textcopyright} \) in the relevant exterior mirror may not illuminate.

Side blind spot alert is active from speeds of 6 mph up to 87 mph. Driving faster than 87 mph deactivates the system, indicated by low lighting warning symbols \( \text{\textcopyright} \) in both exterior mirrors. Reducing the speed again will extinguish the warning symbols. If a vehicle is then detected in the blind zone, the warning symbols \( \text{\textcopyright} \) will illuminate as normal on the relevant side.
When the vehicle is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly come on to indicate that the system is operating.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the Info-Display, vehicle personalisation 122.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

Detection zones
The detection zones start at the rear bumper and extend approx. three metres rearwards and to the sides. The height of the zone is approx. between half a metre and two metres off the ground.

Side blind spot alert is designed to ignore stationary objects, e.g. guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

Fault
Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions.

Side blind spot alert does not operate when the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, slush, or in heavy rainstorms. Cleaning instructions 257.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Rear view camera
The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. The view of the camera is displayed in the Colour-Info-Display.

⚠️ Warning
The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the advanced parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

Do not reverse the vehicle by only looking at the Info-Display and check the surrounding area behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

Activation
Rear view camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality
On 5-door hatchback the camera is mounted between the number plate lights.

On Sports Tourer the camera is mounted under the tailgate moulding.

The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

**Guiding lines**

Dynamic guiding lines are horizontal lines at one metre intervals projected onto the picture to define the distance to displayed objects.

**Display settings**

Brightness and contrast can be set by tapping the touch screen display when rear view camera is active.

**Deactivation**

The camera is switched off when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 15 seconds. Rear view camera can be manually deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Colour-Info-Display. Select the relevant setting in **Settings, Vehicle**.

**Deactivation of guiding lines and warning symbols**

Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

**Warning symbols**

Warning symbols are indicated as triangles △ on the picture, which show obstacles detected by the rear sensors of the advanced parking assist.

Additionally △ appears on the top line of the Info-Display with the warning to check the vehicle surrounding.
7” Colour-Info-Display: Activation or deactivation of the visual guiding lines and the warning symbols can be changed via touch buttons in the lower zone of the display.

8” Colour-Info-Display: Activation or deactivation of the visual guiding lines and the warning symbols can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Select the relevant setting in Settings, Vehicle.

Info-Display ◇ 118.
Vehicle personalisation ◇ 122.

Fault

Fault messages are displayed with a △ on the top line of the Info-Display.
The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else covers the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle had a rear end accident.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Traffic sign assistant

Functionality

Traffic sign assistant detects designated traffic signs via a front camera and displays them in the Driver Information Centre.
If the vehicle is equipped with an embedded navigation system, traffic signs from data maps may be included additionally.

Traffic signs, which will be detected, are:

Limit and no passing signs
- speed limit
- no passing
- end of speed limit
- end of no passing

Road signs
Beginning and end of:
- city regions (country specific)
- motorways
- A-roads
- play streets
Add on signs
- additional hints to traffic signs
- restriction of trailer towing
- tractor constraints
- wet warning
- ice warning
- time constraints
- distance constraints
- direction arrows

Speed limit signs and no passing signs are displayed in the Driver Information Centre until the next speed limit sign or end of speed limit is detected or up to a defined sign timeout.

An exclamation mark in a frame indicates that there is an additional sign detected which cannot be clearly identified by the system. The system operates without loss of performance up to a speed of 125 mph depending on the lighting conditions. At night the system is active up to a speed of 100 mph.

Display indication
Information about the currently valid traffic signs is available on the designated traffic sign assistant page in the Driver Information Centre. Additionally, the currently valid speed limit is displayed permanently in the lower line of the Driver Information Centre. In case a speed limit with add on sign is available, a + symbol is displayed in this area.

Indication of multiple signs on the display is possible.

On Midlevel display, choose Info Menu via MENU and select traffic sign assistant page with the adjuster wheel on the turn signal lever 113.
On Uplevel display, choose **Info** Menu via right steering wheel buttons and press ‹ or ▲ to select traffic sign assistant page 113.

When another page on the Driver Information Centre menu was selected and then traffic sign assistant page is chosen again, the last recognised traffic sign will be displayed.

**Alert function**

The alert function can be activated or deactivated in the setting menu of the traffic sign assistant page.

Once activated and when the traffic sign detection page is currently not displayed, newly detected speed limit and no passing signs are displayed as popup alerts in the Driver Information Centre.

On Midlevel Display, when traffic sign assistant page is displayed, press SET/CLR on the turn signal lever.

Select **Alerts ON** or **Alerts OFF** by turning the adjuster wheel and press SET/CLR.

On Uplevel Display, when traffic sign assistant page is displayed, press > on the steering wheel controls.

Activate alerts by setting ☑, deactivate alerts by setting □ via button ✔.

Pop-up alert is displayed for approx. eight seconds in the Driver Information Centre.

**System reset**

The content of the traffic sign display can be cleared in the setting menu of the traffic sign assistant page by selecting **Reset** and confirm by pressing SET/CLR on the turn signal lever or ✔ on the steering wheel controls.
Alternatively, SET/CLR or ✓ can be pressed for three seconds to clear the content of the page.

Upon successful reset, a chime will sound and the following “Default Sign” is indicated until the next traffic sign is detected or provided by map data of the navigation system.

In some cases, traffic sign assistant is cleared up automatically by the system.

Clearing of traffic signs

There are different scenarios that lead to clearing the currently displayed traffic signs. After clearing, the “Default Sign” or a sign from navigation map data is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Reasons for signs being cleared:
- A predefined distance was driven or time has elapsed (differs for each sign type)
- Vehicle drives through a turn
- If no navigation map data is available and speed drops below 32 mph (city entry detection)
- If navigation map data is available and a city entry/exit was detected due to map data change

Traffic sign detection in conjunction with navigation system

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, the currently displayed sign can either originate from optical sign detection or from the map data.

If the currently displayed sign originates from map data and the map information changes, a new sign will be displayed. This may lead to detection of a new sign although no sign on the road may have been passed.

Fault

Traffic sign assistant may not operate correctly if:
- The area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- There are adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snow, direct sunlight or shadows.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on traffic signs (Wiener Übereinkommen über Straßenverkehrszeichen).

Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to discern certain traffic
Driving and operating

Lane keep assist
Lane keep assist helps to avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. The front camera observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned to position the vehicle back into the lane. Turn steering wheel in same direction, if system steers not sufficient. Turn steering wheel gently into opposite direction, if lane change is intended.

When crossing a lane marking significantly, lane keep assist starts a visual and acoustic warning. Unintended lane departure is assumed
- without using turn signal
- using the turn signal in the opposite direction of the lane departure
- without braking
- without acceleration
- without active steering.

Notice
The system is switched off during detection of ambiguous lane markings, e.g. in construction areas.

Notice
The system may be switched off if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

Activation
The lane keep assist is activated by pressing \(\text{\textsuperscript{\textcircled{\textbullet}}}\). The LED in the button illuminates to indicate that the system is switched on.

When the control indicator \(\text{\textsuperscript{\textcircled{\textbullet}}}\) in the instrument cluster illuminates green, the system is ready to assist.
The system is operational at vehicle speeds between 37 mph and 112 mph and if lane markings are available.

The system gently turns the steering wheel and the control indicator changes to yellow, if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

The system alerts by flashing together with three chimes, from the respective direction, if the lane is departed significantly.

The system is only operable when a lane marking is detected.

If the system only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist for this side.

Lane keep assist detects hands-free driving. In this case a message in the Driver Information Centre pops-up and a chime sounds as long as lane keep assist detects hands-free driving.

### Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing ; the LED in the button extinguishes.

### Fault

The system performance may be affected by:

- Windscreens not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers
- Close vehicles ahead
- Banked roads
- Winding or hilly roads
- Road edges
- Roads with poor lane markings
- Sudden lighting changes
- Adverse environmental conditions e.g. heavy rain or snow
- Vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres.

Switch off the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

### Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.

Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle.

The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The steering of the lane keep assist may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.

Using the system while towing a trailer or on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off.
Fuel

Fuel for petrol engines

Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent.

The engine is capable of running with fuel that contains up to 10% ethanol (e.g. named E10).

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating. The engine specific requirements are given in the engine data overview 268. A country specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the requirement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent can lead to deposits or engine damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

Fuel for diesel engines

Only use diesel fuel that complies with EN 590.

In countries outside the European Union use Euro-Diesel fuel with a sulphur concentration below 50 ppm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions. Diesel fuels must not be diluted with fuels for petrol engines.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 590 or similar can lead to engine powerloss, increased wear or engine damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Refuelling

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.
Driving and operating

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>△ Danger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks. If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fuel filler flap is located at right rear side of the vehicle.

The fuel filler cap can be retained in the bracket on the fuel filler flap. To refuel, fully insert the pump nozzle and switch it on. After automatic cut-off, it can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle maximally two more times.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks. Close the flap and engage.

**Fuel filler cap**

Only use genuine fuel filler caps. Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

**Fuel consumption - CO₂ Emissions**

The fuel consumption (combined) of the model Vauxhall Astra is within a range of 46 to 85 mpg.
The CO₂ emission (combined) is within a range of 142 to 88 g/km. For the values specific for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

General information

The official fuel consumption and specific CO₂ emission figures quoted relate to the EU base model with standard equipment.

Fuel consumption data and CO₂ emission data are determined according to regulation R (EC) No. 715/2007 (in the latest applicable version), taking into consideration the vehicle weight in running order, as specified by the regulation.

The figures are provided only for the purpose of comparison between different vehicle variants and must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle. Additional equipment may result in slightly higher results than the stated consumption and CO₂ figures. Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions.

Trailer hitch

General information

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle. Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

The bulb outage detection function for trailer brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage, e.g. in case of four times five watt bulbs, the function only detects lamp outage when only a single five Watt lamp remains or none remain.

Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye. If this is the case use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle when not in use.
Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 50 mph. A maximum speed of 60 mph is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle’s curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load 276.

### Trailer towing

#### Trailer loads

**Warning**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicles with engine B14XFT and automatic transmission:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of towing equipment is permissible for attaching compatible bicycle carriers only. Do not use towing equipment for trailer towing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for gradients up to max. 12%.

The permitted trailer load applies up to the specified incline and up to an altitude of 1000 metres above sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 metres of additional altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate 263.

#### Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load (75 kg) is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents. Always aim for the maximum load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.
**Rear axle load**

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 40 kg. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 60 mph applies.

**Towing equipment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stowage of coupling ball bar**

The bag with the coupling ball bar is stowed on the rear floor cover in the load compartment.
Place the strap through the rear right lashing eye, wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

**Fitting the coupling ball bar**

Illustration shows 5-door hatchback.

Illustration shows Sports Tourer.

On Sports Tourer remove cover from rear bumper by pushing.
Disengage and fold down the connecting socket. Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

Checking the tensioning of the coupling ball bar

- Red marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- The gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar must be approx. 6 mm.
- The key must be in position ć.

Otherwise, the coupling ball bar must be tensioned before being inserted:

- Unlock coupling ball bar by turning key to position ć.

Inserting the coupling ball bar

Insert the tensioned coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages. The rotary handle snaps back into its original position resting against the coupling ball bar without a gap.

⚠️ Warning

- Do not touch rotary handle during insertion.

Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to position ć. Remove the key and close the protective flap.
Eye for break-away stopping cable

Attach breakaway stopping cable to eye.

Check that the coupling ball bar is correctly installed
- Green marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- There must be no gap between the rotary handle and the coupling ball bar.
- The coupling ball bar must be firmly engaged in the opening.
- The coupling ball bar must be locked and the key removed.

⚠️ Warning
Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Dismounting the coupling ball bar

Open the protective flap and turn the key to position \( \text{OPEN} \) to unlock the coupling ball bar.
Pull out rotary handle and turn clockwise as far as it will go. Pull out coupling ball bar downwards.
Insert sealing plug in opening.

Fold away connecting socket.

On Sports Tourer insert cover into rear bumper as shown in the illustration.
Driving and operating

Stow the coupling ball bar in the bag and secure by fixing the strap through the rear right lashing eye. Wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

**Trailer stability assist**

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible. Trailer stability assist is a function of the Electronic Stability Control \( \Rightarrow 176 \).
**General Information**

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Do not make any modifications to the electrical system, e.g. changes of electronic control units (chip tuning).

**Caution**

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.
Vehicle storage

Storage for a long period of time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to P. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.

- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

End-of-life vehicle recovery

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.
Vehicle checks

Performing work

⚠️ Warning
Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

⚠️ Danger
The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

Bonnet

Opening

Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.

Move the safety catch sideways to the left vehicle side and open the bonnet.

Secure the bonnet support.
If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons.

Closing
Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.
Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm). Check that the bonnet is engaged.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Engine oil
Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used.
Recommended fluids and lubricants 261.
The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km.

Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality oil in the engine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, insert it to the stop on the handle, pull out and read the engine oil level.
Insert dipstick to the stop on the handle and make half a turn.
Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the MIN mark, top up engine oil.
Vehicle care

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

The engine oil level must not exceed the MAX mark on the dipstick.

Capacities ★ 275.
Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

Engine coolant

The coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -28 °C. In cold regions with very low temperatures, the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37 °C.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Only use approved antifreeze.

Caution
Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.

Coolant level

If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line mark. Top up if the level is low.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have
the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

**Washer fluid**

Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

**Caution**

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

**Brakes**

In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, a squealing noise sounds during braking. Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible. Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

**Brake fluid**

- **Warning**
  
  Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.

The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks. If fluid level is below MIN seek the assistance of a workshop. Brake and clutch fluid 261.
Vehicle battery

The vehicle battery is located in the load compartment under the rear floor cover behind the rear seats. Rear floor cover 79.

There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment. Jump starting 253.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Vehicle battery discharge protection 142.

Replacing the vehicle battery

Notice
Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

In vehicles with an AGM (Absorptive Glass Mat) battery, make sure to have the battery replaced with another AGM battery.

An AGM battery can be identified by the label on the battery. We recommend the use of an original Vauxhall vehicle battery.
Notice
Using an AGM vehicle battery different from the original Vauxhall vehicle battery may result in a lower performance.

We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system  159.

Charging the vehicle battery

⚠️ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

Jump starting  253.

Warning label

Meaning of symbols:
- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.

- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

Diesel fuel system bleeding
If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Switch on the ignition three times for 15 seconds at a time. Then crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than five seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.
Wiper blade replacement

Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.
Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.
Lower wiper arm carefully.

Wiper blade on the rear window

Lift wiper arm. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.
Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.
Lower wiper arm carefully.

Bulb replacement

Switch off the ignition and switch off the relevant switch or close the doors.
Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.
Use only the same bulb type for replacement.
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

Bulb check

After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

Halogen headlights

Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.
Vehicle care

Low beam (1) outer bulb.
High beam (2) inner bulb.

**Low beam (1)**

1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

2. Disengage spring clip from retainer by pulling. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.

3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.

4. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.

5. Push spring clip back in place.

6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

**High beam (2)**

1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Disengage spring clip from retainer by moving it forward and to the side. Swivel spring clip downwards.
3. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.

4. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
5. Insert the bulb holder and install spring clip.
   Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

Front turn signal light
In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

Side light
In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

Daytime running light
In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

Fog lights
The bulbs are accessible from the underside of the vehicle.

1. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it from the reflector.
2. Disengage the bulb socket from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
3. Remove and replace the bulb socket with bulb and attach the plug connector.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector by turning clockwise and engage.

**Tail lights**

**5-door Hatchback**

1. Release the cover on the respective side and remove it.
2. Vehicles with tyre repair kit: To replace bulbs on the right side, first unscrew the plastic nut and take out the insert with the sealant bottle.
3. Unscrew the plastic securing nut from the inside by hand.
4. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recess and remove.

5. Detach the cable from the retainer.

6. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.

7. Remove and replace the bulbs:
   - Turn signal light (1)
   - Tail light/brake light (2)

8. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.

9. Attach the cable to the retainer.

10. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nut from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

   Depending on the version, tail lights and brake lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.
Light assembly in the tailgate

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.
3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.
4. Detach the plug from the light assembly.
5. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.
On version with LED tail lights, the position of the retaining lugs is slightly different.

6. Remove and replace the bulb:
   Tail light (1)
   Rear fog light (2) (left side)
   Reverse light (2) (right side)

7. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly. Attach plug to the light assembly. Fit light assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

Sports Tourer

1. Release and open the cover on the respective side.
2. Unscrew both plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.

3. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recess and remove.

4. Detach the cable from the retainer.

5. Release the retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.

6. Remove and replace the bulbs: Tail light/brake light (1)

7. Insert the bulb carrier into the light assembly.

8. On version with LED tail lights and brake lights, only turn signal light bulb can be replaced: remove bulb holder in the light assembly by turning. Replace bulb in the bulb holder.

9. Attach the cable to the retainer.

10. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

Turn signal light (2)
Depending on the version, tail lights and brake lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

**Light assembly in the tailgate**

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.
3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.
4. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.
5. Remove and replace the bulb:
   Reverse light (1)
   Tail light (2)
   Rear fog light (3) (left side)
6. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly.

Depending on the version, tail lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

**Side turn signal lights**
To replace bulb, remove lamp housing:

7. On version with LED tail lights only reverse light bulb can be replaced: remove bulb holder in the light assembly by turning. Replace bulb in the bulb holder.
8. Fit light assembly on the tailgate and tighten the securing nut from the inside. Attach cover.

2. Turn bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from housing.

1. Slide lamp to its left side and remove with its right end.

3. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
4. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

**Number plate light**

1. Insert screwdriver in recess of the cover, press to the side and release spring.
2. Remove lamp downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.
3. Remove bulb holder from lamp housing by turning anticlockwise.
4. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
5. Insert bulb holder into lamp housing and turn clockwise.
6. Insert lamp into bumper and let engage.

Some versions have LED number plate lights. In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

**Interior lights**

**Courtesy light, reading lights**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

**Load compartment light**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

**Instrument panel illumination**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.
Electrical system

Fuses
Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse. There are three fuse boxes in the vehicle:
- engine compartment
- instrument panel
- load compartment
Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.
A blown fuse can be recognized by its melted wire. Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.
Some functions are protected by several fuses. Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.

Fuse extractor
A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.

Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.
Engine compartment fuse box

The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment. Disengage the cover and remove it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Starter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Starter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Exhaust sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Engine functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Transmission control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Climate control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Diesel exhaust system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Tailgate locking system, Transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Seat lumbar massage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>After boil pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Diesel exhaust system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Exhaust sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Fuel injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Fuel injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Diesel exhaust system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Diesel exhaust system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>DC/AC Converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Washer system for windscreen and rear window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Diesel fuel heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Transmission control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Power tailgate module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Heated rear window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Mirror defrost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>DC transformer/LED display/Electrical heater/Climate control/Glow plug controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Anti theft warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Power outlet load compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Right high beam (Halogen)/Right low beam (LED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Left high beam (Halogen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>LED headlight/Automatic headlight range adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Front fog light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>OnStar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Water in fuel sensor/Water pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Manual headlight range adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Fuel pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Rear view camera/Inside rear view mirror/Trailer module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>LED headlight left/Automatic headlight range adjustment left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Instrument cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Steering column lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Rear wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>LED headlight right/Automatic headlight range adjustment right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Left low beam (LED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Engine control module/Transmission control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Windscreen wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Diesel exhaust system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.
If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, malfunction may occur.
**Instrument panel fuse box**

The fuse box is located behind a cover.

Pull the cover and remove.

Vehicles with power connector:

If the fuse cover has a power connector, it must be removed by using an adapter and a screwdriver. The adapter is stowed in the glovebox 70. The screwdriver is stowed in the load compartment 236.

Push the screwdriver through the recess in the adapter. Remove the cover by pulling the screwdriver.

Attach the adapter to the power connector.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Climate control system, fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Power seat driver side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Cigarette lighter/Power outlet front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Power window front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Heated steering wheel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Power window rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Sunroof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Seat heating (only on vehicles without alarm horn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Exterior mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Data link connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Airbag system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Climate control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Central locking system, tailgate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Electronic key system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Power seat memory function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Airbag system steering wheel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Ignition switch/Steering column lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>USB socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Selector lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Rear window wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Transmission control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Anti-theft alarm system/Power sounder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Parking assist/Side blind spot alert/Infotainment system/USB socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>OnStar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Info display/Instrument cluster CD player</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Infotainment system, radio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

Vehicles with power connector:
1. Apply the cover on the right side.
2. Fold the left side of the cover forwards. Take care that the securing clamp is guided as shown in the illustration.

Load compartment fuse box

The fuse box is located on the left side of the load compartment behind a cover.

Remove the cover.

Disengage the fuse box cover and remove it.
### Vehicle care

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>DC/AC Inverter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Trailer module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Power seat passenger side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Distance warning module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Rear seat heating (on vehicles without alarm horn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Front seat heating (on vehicles with alarm horn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Rear seat heating (on vehicles with alarm horn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Ignition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Seat ventilation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Trailer outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Trailer outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Electrical rear seat folding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Power tailgate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

### Vehicle tools

#### Tools

5-door hatchback with spare wheel

Open the floor cover of the load compartment ⦁ 79.

The jack, the towing eye, a strap for securing a damaged wheel and the tools are located in the tool box below the spare wheel. Spare wheel ⦁ 250.
Sports Tourer with spare wheel
Open the floor cover of the load compartment \(\checkmark\) 79.

The jack, the towing eye and the tools are located in the tool box below the spare wheel. Spare wheel \(\checkmark\) 250.

5-door hatchback with tyre repair kit
Open the cover in the right side wall of the load compartment.
Some tools and the towing eye are located together with the tyre repair kit in a tool box.

Sports Tourer with tyre repair kit
Open the floor cover of the load compartment \(\checkmark\) 79.
The tools and the towing eye are located together with the tyre repair kit in a tool box.
**Wheels and tyres**

**Tyre condition, wheel condition**

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

**Winter tyres**

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

All tyre sizes are permitted as winter tyres 276.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view.

---

**Tyre designations**

E.g. 215/60 R 16 95 H

215 : Tyre width, mm
60 : Cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %
R : Belt type: Radial
RF : Type: RunFlat
16 : Wheel diameter, inches
95 : Load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 690 kg
H : Speed code letter

Speed code letter:
Q : up to 100 mph
S : up to 112 mph
T : up to 118 mph
H : up to 130 mph
V : up to 150 mph
W : up to 168 mph

Choose a tyre appropriate for the maximum speed of your vehicle.

The maximum speed is achievable at kerb weight with driver (75 kg) plus 125 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Performance 270.

**Tyre pressure**

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel.

This also applies to vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system.

Unscrew the valve cap.

Tyre pressure 276.

The tyre pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tyres and the correspondent tyre pressures.
The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.

The ECO tyre pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

Tyre pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:

1. Identify the engine identifier code. Engine data 268.
2. Identify the respective tyre.

The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations 276.

For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

⚠️ Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

⚠️ Warning

For specific tyres the recommended tyre pressure as shown in the tyre pressure table may exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased on a vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring system, switch off ignition.

Temperature dependency

The tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tyre temperature and pressure increase. Tyre pressure values provided on the tyre information label and tyre pressure chart are valid for cold tyres, which means at 20 °C.

The pressure increases by nearly 1.5 psi for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tyres are checked.

The tyre pressure value displayed in the Driver Information Centre shows the real tyre pressure. A cooled down tyre will show a decreased value, which does not indicate an air leak.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

The tyre pressure monitoring system checks the pressure of all four tyres once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.
Caution

Tyre pressure monitoring system warns only about low tyre pressure condition and does not replace regular tyre maintenance by the driver.

All wheels must be equipped with pressure sensors and the tyres must have the prescribed pressure.

Notice

In countries where the tyre pressure monitoring system is legally required, the use of wheels without pressure sensors will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

The current tyre pressures can be shown in the Driver Information Centre.

Midlevel display:

Select the Tyre pressure page under the Vehicle Information Menu in the Driver Information Centre 113.

Uplevel display:

Select the Tyre pressure page under the Info Menu in the Driver Information Centre 113.

System status and pressure warnings are displayed by a message indicating the corresponding tyre in the Driver Information Centre.

The system considers the tyre temperature for the warnings.

Temperature dependency 238.

A detected low tyre pressure condition is indicated by the control indicator 111.

If  illuminates, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres as recommended 276.

If  flashes for 60-90 seconds then illuminates continuously, there is a fault in the system. Consult a workshop.
After inflating, some driving may be required to update the tyre pressure values in the Driver Information Centre. During this time ⚠ may illuminate.

If ⚠ illuminates at lower temperatures and extinguishes after driving, this could be an indicator for approaching a low tyre pressure condition. Check tyre pressure.

Vehicle messages ⚠ 120.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased, switch off ignition.

Only mount wheels with pressure sensors, otherwise the tyre pressure will not be displayed and ⚠ illuminates continuously.

A spare wheel or temporary spare wheel is not equipped with pressure sensors. The tyre pressure monitoring system is not operational for these tyres. Control indicator ⚠ illuminates. For the further three tyres, the system remains operational.

The use of commercially-available liquid tyre repair kits can impair the function of the system. Factory-approved repair kits can be used.

Operating electronic devices or being close to facilities using similar wave frequencies could disrupt the tyre pressure monitoring system.

Each time the tyres are replaced, tyre pressure monitoring system sensors must be dismounted and serviced. For the screwed sensor, replace valve core and sealing ring. For the clipped sensor, replace complete valve stem.

Vehicle loading status
Adjust tyre pressure to load condition according to the tyre information label or tyre pressure chart ⚠ 276, and select the appropriate setting in the Tyre load menu in the Driver Information Centre ⚠ 113. This setting is the reference for the tyre pressure warnings.

Select the Tyre load menu only appears if the vehicle is in a standstill and the parking brake is applied. On vehicles with automatic transmission the selector lever has to be in P.

Midlevel display:

Select

- **Light** for comfort pressure up to three people.
- **Eco** for Eco pressure up to three people.
- **Max** for full loading.
Select the Tyre load page under the Options Menu in the Driver Information Centre 113.

Select

- **Light** for comfort pressure up to three people.
- **Eco** for Eco pressure up to three people.
- **Max** for full loading.

**Tyre pressure sensor matching process**

Each tyre pressure sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code must be matched to a new wheel position after rotating the wheels or exchanging the complete wheel set and if one or more tyre pressure sensors were replaced. The tyre pressure sensor matching process should also be performed after replacing a spare wheel with a road wheel containing the tyre pressure sensor.

The malfunction light and the warning message or code should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the wheel positions, using a relearn tool, in the following order: left side front wheel, right side front wheel, right side rear wheel and left side rear wheel. The turn signal light at the current active position is illuminated until sensor is matched.

Consult a workshop for service or purchase a relearn tool. There are two minutes to match the first wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The tyre pressure sensor matching process is:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. On vehicles with automatic transmission: set the selector lever to P.
   
   On vehicles with manual transmission: select neutral.
4. Midlevel display:
   
   Use MENU on the turn signal lever to select the Vehicle Information Menu in the Driver Information Centre.

   Uplevel display:
   
   Press on the steering wheel to open main menu page.
   
   Select the Info page with or .
   
   Confirm with .
5. Select the tyre pressure menu.

Midlevel display:
6. Midlevel display:
Press SET/CLR to begin the sensor matching process. A message requesting acceptance of the process should be displayed.

Press SET/CLR again to confirm the selection. The horn sounds twice to indicate that the receiver is in relearn mode.

Uplevel display:
Press 9 to begin the sensor matching process. The horn sounds twice to indicate that the receiver is in relearn mode.

7. Start with the left side front wheel.
8. Place the relearn tool against the tyre sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the tyre pressure sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this wheel position.
9. Proceed to the right side front wheel, and repeat the procedure in Step 8.
10. Proceed to the right side rear wheel, and repeat the procedure in Step 8.
11. Proceed to the left side rear wheel, and repeat the procedure in Step 8. The horn sounds twice to indicate that the sensor identification code has been matched to the left side rear wheel, and the tyre pressure sensor matching process is no longer active.
12. Turn off the ignition.
13. Set all four tyres to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the tyre pressure information label.
14. Ensure the tyre loading status is set according to the selected pressure.

**Tread depth**

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

Tyres should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tyres).

For safety reasons it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.
The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every six years.

### Changing tyre and wheel size

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the speedometer as well as the nominal tyre pressure and make other vehicle modifications.

After converting to a different tyre size, have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

Furthermore, the advanced parking assist must be calibrated \(\Rightarrow 186\).

#### Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

## Wheel covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

#### Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

## Tyre chains

Tyre chains are only permitted on the front wheels.
Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

⚠️ Warning

Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

Tyre chains are permitted on tyres of size 195/65 R15, 205/55 R16 and 215/55 R16.

Temporary spare wheel

The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

Tyre repair kit

Minor damage to the tyre tread can be repaired with the tyre repair kit. Do not remove foreign bodies from the tyres. Tyre damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tyre's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

⚠️ Warning

Do not drive faster than 50 mph. Do not use for a lengthy period. Steering and handling may be affected.

If you have a flat tyre:
Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.

1. Remove the sealant bottle.
2. Insert thumb into the opening and pull out the compressor.

On Sports Tourer the tyre repair kit is in the load compartment below the floor cover.

On 5-door hatchback the tyre repair kit is on the right side in the load compartment behind a cover.
3. Remove the electrical connection cable and air hose from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.

4. Screw the compressor air hose to the connection on the sealant bottle.

5. Fit the sealant bottle into the retainer on the compressor. Set the compressor near the tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.

6. Unscrew valve cap from defective tyre.

7. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.

8. The switch on the compressor must be set to O.

9. Connect the compressor plug to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. To avoid discharging the battery, we recommend running the engine.

10. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to I. The tyre is filled with sealant.

11. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 6 bar whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.

12. All of the sealant is pumped into the tyre. Then the tyre is inflated.
13. The prescribed tyre pressure should be obtained within ten minutes. Tyre pressure 276. When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.

If the prescribed tyre pressure is not obtained within ten minutes, remove the tyre repair kit. Move the vehicle one tyre rotation. Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for ten minutes. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Drain excess tyre pressure with the button over the pressure indicator.
Do not run the compressor longer than ten minutes.

14. Detach the tyre repair kit. Push catch on bracket to remove sealant bottle from bracket. Screw the tyre inflation hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tyre repair kit in load compartment.

15. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.

16. Take the label indicating maximum permitted speed from the sealant bottle and affix in the driver's field of view.

17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tyre. After driving approx. six miles (but no more than ten minutes), stop and check tyre pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tyre valve and compressor when doing this.

If tyre pressure is more than 1.3 bar, set it to the correct value. Repeat the procedure until there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 1.3 bar, the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

18. Stow away tyre repair kit in load compartment.
### Notice

The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre are severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 minutes.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of seven bar (102 psi).

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

The adapters supplied can be used to pump up other items e.g. footballs, air mattresses, inflatable dinghies etc. They are located on the underside of the compressor. To remove, screw on compressor air hose and withdraw adapter.

### Wheel changing

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre repair kit instead of a spare wheel $\triangleright$ 245.

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
- Remove the spare wheel $\triangleright$ 250.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- The jack is maintenance-free.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. one cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.

- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

#### Warning

Do not grease wheel bolt, wheel nut and wheel nut cone.

1. Disengage wheel nut caps with a screwdriver and remove. For alloy wheels, place a soft cloth underneath the screwdriver. Pull off the wheel cover. Vehicle tools $\triangleright$ 236.
2. Fold out the wheel wrench and install ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

4. Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.

Attach wheel wrench and with the jack correctly aligned rotate wheel wrench until wheel is clear of the
Vehicle care

5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
6. Change the wheel. Spare wheel 250.
7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely and tighten each nut in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 140 Nm.
10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tyre valve before installing.
    Install wheel nut caps.
11. Stow the replaced wheel 250 and the vehicle tools 236.
12. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

Front arm position of the lifting platform at the underbody.

Spare wheel

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre repair kit instead of a spare wheel.

If mounting a spare wheel which is different from the other wheels, this wheel might be classified as a temporary spare wheel and the corresponding speed limits apply, even though no label indicates this. Seek the assistance of a workshop to check the applicable speed limit.

The spare wheel has a steel rim.

Caution

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.
The spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering.

To remove:
1. Open the floor cover \( \Phi \) 79.
2. The spare wheel is secured with a wing nut. Unscrew nut and take out the spare wheel.
   Under the spare wheel there is the box with vehicle tools.

3. When, after a wheel change, no wheel is placed in the spare wheel well, secure the tool box by tightening the wing nut as far as it will go and close floor cover.
4. After wheel change back to full size wheel, place the spare wheel outside up in the well and secure with the wing nut.

**Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment, 5-door hatchback**

The spare wheel well is not designed for other tyre sizes than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the load compartment and secured with a strap. Vehicle tools \( \Phi \) 236. To secure the wheel:
1. Position the wheel outside up close to one sidewall of the load compartment.

2. Place the loop end of the strap through the front lashing eye on the appropriate side.
3. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the lashing eye.
4. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown in the illustration.
5. Mount the hook to the rear lashing eye.
6. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

**Danger**

Always drive with folded up and engaged rear seat backrests when stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment.

---

**Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment, Sports Tourer**

All permitted wheel sizes can be stowed in the spare wheel well. To secure the wheel:

1. Remove centre cap with the brand emblem by pushing from the inside.
2. Position the wheel outside down in the wheel well.
3. Secure the defective wheel with the wing nut.
4. Depending on the tyre size, the floor cover can be placed on the projecting wheel.

**Temporary spare wheel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 50 mph. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

If your vehicle gets a flat tyre on the rear while towing another vehicle, mount the temporary spare wheel in the front and the full tyre in the rear.

Tyre chains ⧿ 244.
Spare wheel with directional tyre

If possible, fit directional tyres such that they roll in the direction of travel. The rolling direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

The following applies to tyres fitted opposing the rolling direction:

- Driveability may be affected. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible and fit it instead of the spare wheel.
- Drive particularly carefully on wet and snow-covered road surfaces.

Jump starting

The vehicle battery is located in the load compartment under a cover. There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Do not start with quick charger.

⚠️ Warning

Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

⚠️ Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen vehicle battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a vehicle battery.
- Use a booster vehicle battery with the same voltage (12 Volt). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm² (25 mm² for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.

Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.

The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.

Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in P.

Open the positive terminal protection cap of your vehicle in the engine compartment and of the booster vehicle battery.

**Lead connection order:**

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of your vehicle near the fuse box in the engine compartment.
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.
5. Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers (e.g. headlights, heated rear window) of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.
Towing

Towing the vehicle

Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools 236.

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

Transmission in neutral.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: The vehicle must be towed facing forwards, not faster than 50 mph nor further than 60 miles. In all other cases and when the transmission is defective, the front axle must be raised off the ground.

Vehicles with manual transmission automated: the vehicle must only be towed facing forwards with the front axle raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.
Towing another vehicle

Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the lower bend of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools 236.

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope – or even better a tow bar – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.
Appearance care

Exterior care

Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax your vehicle regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer’s instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminium to avoid damages.

Caution

Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of four to nine.
Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Exterior lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

Polishing and waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads). Otherwise, the paintwork will dry out.

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.
Vehicle care

Windows and windscreen wiper blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Remove dirt residues from smearing wiper blades by using a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

Sunroof

Never clean with solvents or abrasive agents, fuels, aggressive media (e.g. paint cleaner, acetone-containing solutions etc.), acidic or highly alkaline media or abrasive pads. Do not apply wax or polishing agents to the sunroof.

Wheels and tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

Paintwork damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

Underbody

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen/rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

Towing equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Air shutter

Clean the shutter system in the front bumper to maintain correct functionality.

Interior care

Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.
Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.
The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.
Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.
Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.
Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery. The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plastic and rubber parts
Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.
In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified. The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

**European service intervals**

Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 20,000 miles or after one year, whichever occurs first, unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

A shorter service interval can be valid for severe driving behaviour, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles.

The European service intervals are valid for the following countries:

- Andorra
- Austria
- Belgium
- Bosnia-Herzegovina
- Bulgaria
- Croatia
- Cyprus
- Czech Republic
- Denmark
- Estonia
- Finland
- France
- Germany
- Greece
- Greenland
- Hungary
- Iceland
- Ireland
- Italy
- Latvia
- Liechtenstein
- Lithuania
- Luxembourg
- Macedonia
- Malta
- Monaco
- Montenegro
- Netherlands
- Norway
- Poland
- Portugal
- Romania
- San Marino
- Serbia
- Slovakia
- Slovenia
- Spain
- Sweden
- Switzerland
- United Kingdom

**International service intervals**

Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 10,000 miles or after one year, whichever occurs first, unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

The international service intervals are valid for the countries which are not listed in the European service intervals.

- Service display \(\diamondsuit\) 106.
Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Service interval with remaining engine oil life duration

The service interval is based on several parameters depending on usage.

The service display lets you know when to change the engine oil.

Service display 106.

Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

Recommended fluids and lubricants

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

⚠️ Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil’s thickness over a temperature range.

Dexos is the newest engine oil quality that provides optimum protection for gasoline and diesel engines. If it is unavailable, engine oils of other listed qualities have to be used. Recommendations for gasoline engines are also valid for Compressed Natural Gas (CNG), Liquified Petroleum Gas (LPG) and Ethanol (E85) fuelled engines.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature 265.

Topping up engine oil

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Use of engine oil with only ACEA A1/B1 or only A5/B5 quality is prohibited, since it can cause long-term engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature 265.
Additional engine oil additives
The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine oil viscosity grades
The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil.
Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.
Select the appropriate viscosity grade depending on the minimum ambient temperature 3 265.
All of the recommended viscosity grades are suitable for high ambient temperatures.

Coolant and antifreeze
Use only organic acid type-long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.
The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -28 °C. In northern countries with very low temperatures the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

Brake and clutch fluid
Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.
Technical data

Vehicle identification .......................... 263
Vehicle Identification Number .. 263
Identification plate ....................... 263
Engine identification .................. 264

Vehicle data .................................. 265
Recommended fluids and lubricants .................. 265
Engine data .................................... 268
Performance .................................. 270
Vehicle weight .................................. 272
Vehicle dimensions ......................... 274
Capacities .................................. 275
Tyre pressures ............................... 276

Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identification Number

The Vehicle Identification Number may be stamped on the identification plate and on the floor pan, under the floor covering, visible under a cover. The Vehicle Identification Number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen, or in the engine compartment on the right body panel.

Identification plate

The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame.
Information on identification label:
1 : manufacturer
2 : type approval number
3 : vehicle identification number
4 : permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
5 : permissible gross train weight in kg
6 : maximum permissible front axle load in kg
7 : maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
8 : vehicle-specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight. For example, if the front axle is bearing its maximum permissible load, the rear axle can only bear a load that is equal to the gross vehicle weight minus the front axle load.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications. Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

**Engine identification**

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code. Engine data 268.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
### Vehicle data

**Recommended fluids and lubricants**

**European service schedule**

**Required engine oil quality**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil quality</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dexos 1</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dexos 2</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In case dexos quality is unavailable you may use max. one litre engine oil quality ACEA C3 once between each oil change.

**Engine oil viscosity grades**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ambient temperature</th>
<th>Petrol and diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>down to -25 °C</td>
<td>SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below -25 °C</td>
<td>SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical data

International service schedule

Required engine oil quality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil quality</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dexos 1 (if available)</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dexos 2</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In case dexos quality is unavailable you may use the oil qualities listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil quality</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GM-LL-A-025</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GM-LL-B-025</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil quality</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACEA A3/B3</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACEA A3/B4</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Technical data

#### ACEA C3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All countries with international service interval</th>
<th>260</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### API SM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All countries with international service interval</th>
<th>260</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### API SN resource conserving

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All countries with international service interval</th>
<th>260</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Engine oil viscosity grades

#### Ambient temperature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Petrol and diesel engines</th>
<th>SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>down to -25 °C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below -25 °C</td>
<td>SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down to -20 °C</td>
<td>SAE 10W-30&lt;sup&gt;1)&lt;/sup&gt; or SAE 10W-40&lt;sup&gt;1)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1)</sup> Permitted, but usage of SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40 with dexos quality is recommended.
## Engine data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine identifier code</th>
<th>B10XFL</th>
<th>B14XE</th>
<th>B14XFL</th>
<th>B14XFT</th>
<th>B16SHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sales designation</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineering code</td>
<td>B10XFT</td>
<td>B14XE</td>
<td>B14XFT</td>
<td>B14XFT</td>
<td>B16SHT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piston displacement [cm³]</td>
<td>999</td>
<td>1399</td>
<td>1399</td>
<td>1399</td>
<td>1598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine power [kW]</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>4500-6000</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>4000-5600</td>
<td>5000-5600</td>
<td>5500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque [Nm]</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>245/230²</td>
<td>245/230²</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>1800-4300</td>
<td>4300</td>
<td>2000-3500</td>
<td>2000-4000</td>
<td>1650-5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octane rating RON³)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recommended</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional fuel type</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

²) With Stop-start system.
³) A country specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine specific requirement.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine identifier code</th>
<th>B16DTC</th>
<th>B16DTE</th>
<th>B16DTU</th>
<th>B16DTR</th>
<th>B16DTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sales designation</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineering code</td>
<td>B16DTE</td>
<td>B16DTE</td>
<td>B16DTU</td>
<td>B16DTR</td>
<td>B16DTH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piston displacement [cm³]</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>1598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine power [kW]</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>3500</td>
<td>3500</td>
<td>3500</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>3500-4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque [Nm]</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Technical data

### Performance

#### 5-door Hatchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>B10XFL</th>
<th>B14XE</th>
<th>B14XFL</th>
<th>B14XFT</th>
<th>B16SHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed [mph]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission automated</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>B16DTC</th>
<th>B16DTE</th>
<th>B16DTU</th>
<th>B16DTH</th>
<th>B16DTR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed [mph]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Sports Tourer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>B10XFL</th>
<th>B14XE</th>
<th>B14XFL</th>
<th>B14XFT</th>
<th>B16SHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed [mph]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission automated</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>B16DTC</th>
<th>B16DTE</th>
<th>B16DTU</th>
<th>B16DTH</th>
<th>B16DTR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed [mph]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Vehicle weight

**Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5-door Hatchback</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Manual transmission automated</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>without/with air conditioning [kg]</td>
<td>B10XFL</td>
<td>1263/1273</td>
<td>1263/1273</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B14XE</td>
<td>1234/1244</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B14XFL</td>
<td>–/1278</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B14XFT</td>
<td>–/1278</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/1308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16SHT</td>
<td>–/1350</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTC</td>
<td>1335/1345</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTE</td>
<td>1350/1360</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTU</td>
<td>1335/1345</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>1350/1360</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/1364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTR</td>
<td>1396/1406</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

Loading information ⇨ 87.
### Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>without/with air conditioning</td>
<td>B10XFL</td>
<td>1278/1288</td>
<td>1278/1288</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kg]</td>
<td>B14XE</td>
<td>1263/1273</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B14XFL</td>
<td>–/1322</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B14XFT</td>
<td>–/1322</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/1350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16SHT</td>
<td>–/1393</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTC</td>
<td>1378/1388</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTE</td>
<td>1393/1403</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTU</td>
<td>1393/1403</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>–/1393</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/1425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTR</td>
<td>1425/1435</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.
Loading information ◇ 87.
## Technical data

### Vehicle dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>5-door hatchback</th>
<th>Sports Tourer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Length [mm]</td>
<td>4370</td>
<td>4702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width without exterior mirrors [mm]</td>
<td>1809</td>
<td>1809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width with two exterior mirrors [mm]</td>
<td>2042</td>
<td>2042</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (without antenna) [mm]</td>
<td>1437-1531</td>
<td>1452-1580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of load compartment floor [mm]</td>
<td>828</td>
<td>1065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of load compartment with folded rear seats [mm]</td>
<td>1575</td>
<td>1872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment width [mm]</td>
<td>1001</td>
<td>1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment height [mm]</td>
<td>588</td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase [mm]</td>
<td>2662</td>
<td>2662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turning circle diameter [m]</td>
<td>11.05-11.44</td>
<td>11.05-11.44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Capacities

### Engine oil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>B10XFL</th>
<th>B14XFL, B14XFT, B14XE</th>
<th>B16DTU</th>
<th>B16DTC, B16DTE, B16DTH, B16DTR</th>
<th>B16SHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>including Filter [l]</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between MIN and MAX [l]</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fuel tank

**Petrol/diesel, refilling quantity [l]**

48
## Tyre pressures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>5-door hatchback</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Comfort with up to 3 people</td>
<td>ECO with up to 3 people</td>
<td>With full load</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front</td>
<td>rear</td>
<td>front</td>
<td>rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B10XFL, B14XE</td>
<td>195/65 R15, 225/45 R17</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B14XFL</td>
<td>195/65 R15, 225/45 R17, 225/40 R18</td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B14XFT</td>
<td>195/65 R15, 225/45 R17, 215/55 R16, 215/50 R17, 225/40 R18</td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td>Comfort with up to 3 people</td>
<td>ECO with up to 3 people</td>
<td>With full load</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTE,</td>
<td>225/45 R17,</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>225/40 R18</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTR,</td>
<td>225/45 R17</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16SHT</td>
<td>225/40 R18</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTC,</td>
<td>195/65 R15,</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTU</td>
<td>225/45 R17</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Temporary spare wheel</td>
<td>420/4.2 (60)</td>
<td>420/4.2 (60)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>115/70 R16</td>
<td>420/4.2 (60)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>420/4.2 (60)</td>
<td>420/4.2 (60)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Technical data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sports Tourer</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>front</td>
<td>rear</td>
<td>front</td>
<td>rear</td>
<td>front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[kPa/bar]</td>
<td>[kPa/bar]</td>
<td>[kPa/bar]</td>
<td>[kPa/bar]</td>
<td>[kPa/bar]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B10XFL,</td>
<td>195/65 R15,</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B14XE</td>
<td>225/45 R17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B14XFL</td>
<td>195/65 R15,</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/45 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/40 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B14XFT</td>
<td>195/65 R15,</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/45 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/40 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTE,</td>
<td>225/45 R17,</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>225/40 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sports Tourer</td>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td>Comfort with up to 3 people</td>
<td>ECO with up to 3 people</td>
<td>With full load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>front</td>
<td>rear</td>
<td>front</td>
<td>rear</td>
<td>front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTR, B16SHT</td>
<td>225/45 R17</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35) 220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39) 270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36) 290/2.9 (42)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/40 R18</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38) 240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39) 270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39) 300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35) 220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43) 300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36) 290/2.9 (42)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTC, B16DTU</td>
<td>195/65 R15, 225/45 R17</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35) 220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39) 270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36) 270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35) 220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43) 300/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36) 270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Temporary spare wheel</td>
<td>115/70 R16</td>
<td>420/4.2 (60) 420/4.2 (60)</td>
<td>– –</td>
<td>420/4.2 (60) 420/4.2 (60)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customer information

Declaration of conformity

Radio transmission systems
This vehicle has systems that transmit and/or receive radio waves subject to Directive 1999/5/EC. These systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. Copies of the original Declarations of Conformity can be obtained on our website.

Collision damage repair

Paint thickness
Due to production techniques, the thickness of the paint can vary between 50 and 400 µm. Therefore, different paint thickness is no indicator for a collision damage repair.

Software acknowledgement
Certain OnStar components include libcurl and unzip software and other third party software. Below are the notices and licenses associated with libcurl and unzip and for other third party software please see http://www.lg.com/global/support/opensource/index.

libcurl
Copyright and permission notice
Copyright (c) 1996 - 2010, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>. All rights reserved.
Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies. The software is provided "as is", without warranty of any kind, express or implied, including but not limited to the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and noninfringement of third party rights.
In no event shall the authors or copyright holders be liable for any claim, damages or other liability, whether in an action of contract, tort or otherwise, arising from, out of or in connection with the software or the use or other dealings in the software. Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

unzip

This is version 2005-Feb-10 of the Info-ZIP copyright and license. The definitive version of this document should be available at ftp://ftp.info-zip.org/pub/infozip/license.html indefinitely.

Copyright (c) 1990-2005 Info-ZIP. All rights reserved.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, “Info-ZIP” is defined as the following set of individuals:


This software is provided “as is,” without warranty of any kind, express or implied. In no event shall Info-ZIP or its contributors be held liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special or consequential damages arising out of the use of or inability to use this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions.

2. Redistributions in binary form (compiled executables) must reproduce the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions in documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. The sole exception to this condition is redistribution of a standard UnZipSFX binary (including SFXWiz) as part of a self-extracting archive; that is permitted without inclusion of this license, as long as the normal SFX banner has not been removed from the binary or disabled.

3. Altered versions—including, but not limited to, ports to new operating systems, existing ports with new graphical interfaces, and dynamic, shared, or static library versions—must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source. Such altered
versions also must not be misrepresented as being Info-ZIP releases— including, but not limited to, labeling of the altered versions with the names “Info-ZIP” (or any variation thereof, including, but not limited to, different capitalizations), “Pocket UnZip,” “WiZ” or “MacZip” without the explicit permission of Info-ZIP. Such altered versions are further prohibited from misrepresentative use of the Zip-Bugs or Info-ZIP e-mail addresses or of the Info-ZIP URL(s).


Vehicle data recording and privacy

Event data recorders

Data storage modules in the vehicle

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and errors. In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels)
- status messages of the vehicle and its single components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions / rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration)
- dysfunctions and defects in important system components
- vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system)
- environmental conditions (e.g. temperature)

These data are exclusively technical and help identifying and correcting errors as well as optimising vehicle functions.

Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (manufacturer included) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules applying special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information at these workshops. After an error has been corrected, the data are deleted from the error storage module or they are constantly overwritten.
When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

**Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)**

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and ignition system security. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in Vauxhall vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Vauxhall system containing personal information.
Index

A
Accessories and vehicle modifications .......................... 211
Active emergency braking ........................................... 184
Adjustable air vents ................................................. 151
Airbag and belt tensioners ..................................... 108
Airbag deactivation ................................................. 62, 108
Airbag label .............................................................. 57
Airbag system .......................................................... 57
Air conditioning regular operation ................................ 152
Air conditioning system ............................................ 144
Air intake ................................................................. 152
Air vents ................................................................ 151
Antilock brake system .............................................. 172
Antilock brake system (ABS) ..................................... 110
Anti-theft alarm system ............................................... 35
Anti-theft locking system .......................................... 35
Appearance care ....................................................... 257
Armrest ................................................................. 52, 54
Armrest storage ....................................................... 71
Ashtrays ................................................................. 98
Automatic anti-dazzle ................................................. 40
Automatic light control ............................................. 133
Automatic locking ..................................................... 28
Automatic transmission ........................................... 165
Autostop ................................................................. 159
Auxiliary heater ....................................................... 151

B
Battery discharge protection .................................... 142
Battery voltage ......................................................... 122
Belts ..................................................................... 55
Bonnet ................................................................. 213
Brake and clutch fluid ............................................. 261
Brake and clutch system ......................................... 109
Brake assist ............................................................. 175
Brake fluid .............................................................. 216
Brakes ................................................................. 172, 216
Breakdown ............................................................. 255
Bulb replacement .................................................... 219

C
Capacities ............................................................... 275
Cargo management system ...................................... 81
Catalytic converter .................................................. 165
Central locking system ............................................. 23
Centre console lighting .......................................... 141
Changing tyre and wheel size .................................. 244
Charging system ..................................................... 108
Child locks ............................................................... 29
Child restraint installation locations ......................... 66
Child restraints ......................................................... 63
Child restraint systems .......................................... 63
Climate control ....................................................... 15
Climate control systems ......................................... 143
Clock ................................................................. 94
Collision damage repair .......................................... 280
Control indicators ................................ 107
Control of the vehicle ............................ 154
Controls ........................................ 90
Convex shape .................................. 38
Coolant and antifreeze ......................... 261
Cruise control ................................ 112, 178
Cupholders ..................................... 70
Curtain airbag system ......................... 61
Curve lighting ................................ 134

D
Danger, Warnings and Cautions ... 4
Daytime running lights ....................... 134
Declaration of conformity ........................ 280
Diesel fuel system bleeding ............... 218
Diesel particle filter .......................... 164
Door open .................................... 113
Doors .......................................... 29
Driver assistance systems .................. 178
Driver Information Centre .................. 113
Driving characteristics and towing tips .......... 206
Driving hints .................................. 154

E
Electric adjustment ......................... 38
Electrical system ............................ 230
Electric parking brake ...................... 109, 173
Electric parking brake fault .............. 109
Electronic climate control system ........ 146
Electronic driving programmes .......... 167, 171
Electronic key system ...................... 217, 211
Electronic Stability Control ............. 176
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system .... 110
Electronic Stability Control off .......... 110
End-of-life vehicle recovery .............. 212
Engine compartment fuse box ......... 231
Engine coolant ................................ 215
Engine coolant temperature gauge ........ 105
Engine data ................................ 268
Engine exhaust ................................ 164
Engine identification ...................... 264
Engine oil ................................. 214, 261, 265
Engine oil pressure ......................... 111
Entry lighting ................................ 141
Event data recorders ....................... 282
Exit lighting ................................ 141
Exterior care ................................. 257
Exterior light ................................ 112
Exterior lighting ............................. 12, 132
Exterior mirrors ............................ 38

F
Fault .......................................... 168, 172
First aid kit ................................ 85
Fixed air vents .............................. 151
Fog light ..................................... 112
Fog lights .................................... 221
Folding mirrors ............................. 38
Following distance ......................... 110
Following distance indication .......... 184
Forward collision alert .................... 181
Fragrance diffuser ......................... 97
Front airbag system ....................... 60
Front fog lights ............................ 138
Front seats ................................ 46
Front storage ............................... 71
Fuel ..................................... 203, 204
Fuel consumption - CO2 - Emissions .......... 204
Fuel for diesel engines.................... 203
Fuel for petrol engines ................. 203
Fuel gauge .................................. 105
Fuses ........................................ 230

G
Gauges ...................................... 103
Gear shifting ................................. 110
General information ....................... 205
Glovebox ................................... 70

H
Halogen headlights ....................... 219
Hand brake ................................ 172, 173
Hazard warning flashers ................. 137
Headlight flash .......................... 133
Headlight range adjustment .......... 133
Headlights ................................ 132
Headlights when driving abroad 134
Head restraint adjustment ............. 8
Head restraints ............................ 45
Heated mirrors ............................. 39
Heated rear window ..................... 42
Heated steering wheel ................. 91
Heating .................................. 53, 54
Heating and ventilation system . 143
High beam .............................. 112, 133
High beam assist........................ 112
Hill start assist ........................... 175
Horn ....................................... 13, 91
Identification plate ..................... 263
Ignition switch positions ............. 154
Immobiliser .......................... 37, 112
Indicators.................................... 103
Info display................................ 118
Information displays.................... 113
Instrument cluster ................. 100
Instrument panel fuse box ......... 233
Instrument panel illumination ...... 229
Instrument panel illumination control .................................... 140
Instrument panel overview ....... 10
Interior care ............................... 258
Interior lighting............................ 140
Interior lights ...................... 140, 229
Interior mirrors.............................. 39
Interruption of power supply ...... 168
Introduction .................................. 3
J
Jump starting ............................. 253
K
Key, memorised settings............. 23
Keys ............................................. 19
Keys, locks................................. 19
Lane keep assist................ 110, 201
Lashing eyes ......................... 112, 134
LED headlights................... 112, 134
Lighting features......................... 141
Light switch ................................ 132
Load compartment ................. 29, 72
Load compartment cover ............. 78
Load compartment fuse box ...... 235
Loading information ..................... 87
Low fuel ..................................... 111
Malfunction indicator light ........ 109
Manual anti-dazzle ..................... 39
Manual mode ............................. 167, 171
Manual seat adjustment.......... 47
Manual transmission .......... 169
Manual transmission automated 169
Manual windows ..................... 40
Massage....................................... 54
Maximum speed......................... 238
Memorised settings.................... 23
Midlevel display........................ 113
Mirror adjustment .................... 9
Misted light covers ..................... 139
N
New vehicle running-in .............. 154
Number plate light .................. 229
O
Object detection systems........... 186
Odometer ................................... 104
Oil, engine.......................... 261, 265
OnStar ...................................... 128
Outside temperature ................. 94
Overrun cut-off ......................... 159
P
Parking ................................ 18, 162
Parking assist ......................... 186
Parking brake ............................ 173
Parking lights ........................... 139
Particulate filter....................... 164
Performance ............................ 270
Performing work ...................... 213
Pollen filter ............................. 152
Power button ............................. 155
Power connector ......................... 97
Power outlets ......................... 96
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power seat adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preheating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quickheat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio remote control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear floor storage cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear fog light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear view camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear window wiper/washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended fluids and lubricants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refuelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retained power off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversing lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ride control systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof rack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt reminder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat heating, front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selector lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side airbag system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side blind spot alert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidelights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side turn signal lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software acknowledgement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spare wheel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed limiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speedometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sport mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting and operating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting the engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel controls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop-start system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage compartments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunroof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunvisor lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun visors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-point seat belt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tow bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing another vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing the vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traction Control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traction Control system off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic sign assistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer coupling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer stability assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer towing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip odometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn and lane-change signals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre chains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre designations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre pressure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tyre pressure monitoring
   system.................................. 111, 239
Tyre pressures .......................... 276
Tyre repair kit .......................... 245

U
Ultrasonic parking assist.............. 186
Upholstery................................ 258
Uplevel display.......................... 113
Using this manual ....................... 3

V
Valet mode................................ 118
Vehicle battery .......................... 217
Vehicle checks........................... 213
Vehicle data.............................. 265
Vehicle data recording and
   privacy................................... 282
Vehicle detected ahead............... 112
Vehicle dimensions .................... 274
Vehicle Identification Number ...... 263
Vehicle jack............................. 236
Vehicle messages ...................... 120
Vehicle personalisation .............. 122
Vehicle security........................ 35
Vehicle specific data .................. 3
Vehicle storage........................ 212
Vehicle tools........................... 236
Vehicle unlocking ...................... 6
Vehicle weight .......................... 272

Ventilating.............................. 53
Ventilation................................ 143

W
Warning chimes ......................... 121
Warning lights.......................... 103
Warning triangle ....................... 85
Washer and wiper systems .......... 13
Washer fluid ............................ 216
Wheel changing ........................ 248
Wheel covers ............................ 244
Wheels and tyres ....................... 238
Windows.................................. 40
Windscreen............................... 40
Windscreen wiper/washer ............ 91
Winter tyres ............................ 238
Wiper blade replacement .......... 219